

KARNATAKA PUBLIC SCHOOL.KARAJAGI

TQ/DT:-HAVERI

KSSEB NOTES FOR 10TH STANDARD.

PREPARED BY:-

SHREE.RAMESH.M.BARKI.

ENGLISH TEACHER.

SOURCE:-KSSEB SOLUTIONS.

KARNATAKA PUBLIC SCHOOL.KARAJAGI.

TQ/DT:-HAVERI.

CONTENTS.

CONTENTS.....	2
A HERO.....	3
GRANDMA CLIMBS A TREE.....	23
THERE'S A GIRL BY THE TRACKS!.....	36
QUALITY OF MERCY.....	68
GENTLEMAN OF RIO EN MEDIO	82
I AM THE LAND.....	109
DR. B.R. AMBEDKAR.....	118
THE SONG OF INDIA.	144
THE CONCERT.....	150
JAZZ POEM TWO.....	174
THE DISCOVERY	190
BALLAD OF THE TEMPEST	226
COLOURS OF SILENCE.....	239
THE BLIND BOY	267
SCIENCE AND HOPE OF SURVIVAL	278
OFF TO OUTER SPACE TOMORROW MORNING	305
NARAYANPUR INCIDENT.....	320
ON TOP OF THE WORLD.....	329
A GREAT MARTYR EVER CHERISHED	337
THE BIRD OF HAPPINESS	348

A HERO

A Hero Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

A Hero Lesson Question Answer Question 1.

Swami's father drew his attention to a report in the newspaper. What was the report about?

Answer:

The report was about the bravery of a village lad. When he was returning home in the jungle path suddenly a tiger came. He faced the tiger and climbed up the tree and stayed half a day. Afterwards, some people came that way and killed the tiger.

A Hero Lesson Notes Question 2.

The report said that the boy (who fought with the tiger) stayed on the tree for half-a-day. Why did he do so ? (Choose the right answer)

- a. He wanted to watch the tiger from the top of a tree.
- b. He wanted someone to kill the tiger.
- c. He wanted to take rest for some time.

Answer:

- b. He wanted someone to kill the tiger.

KSEEB Solutions For Class 10 English A Hero Question 3.

Swami said that a very strong and grown-up person might have fought with a tiger. Do you think he made this remark out of his

- (a) experience
- (b) wisdom
- (c) belief? (Choose the most appropriate word)

Answer:

- (c) belief?

10th English A Hero Lesson Question Answer Question 4.

“Can you prove you have courage ?” Swami's father said (Answer the following questions)

- a) Was he joking? or, serious?
- b) Was it a challenge? or, a command?

Answer:

- a. He was serious. This we can easily surmise from his insistence on Swami sleeping alone in the office room.
- b. It was both a challenge and a command. He challenged Swami to prove that he had courage as his stand was that even if one is small and doesn't have the strength of a grown-up if one has courage, one can defeat his adversary (opponent). It was a command also as he wouldn't accept a 'no' for an answer from Swami.

A Hero 10th Lesson Question Answer Question 5.

The place where Swami usually slept was __ (Fill in the blank)

Answer:

beside his granny.

A Hero Lesson Notes Pdf Question 6.

What is disgraceful, according to Swami's father?

Answer:

According to Swami's father, though his son was grown up and in the second form still he was sleeping beside his granny like a baby.

Share your Responses :

A Hero Question Answers Question 1.

What do you think was the practice of granny before she went to bed?

Answer:

As usual, granny was loving her grandson and used to tell stories, patting him, taking care and showered her love.

10th A Hero Lesson Question Answer Question 2.

Was Swami really sleeping? Or was he pretending?

Answer:

Swami was not really sleeping, he was only pretending.

A Hero 10th English Notes Question 3.

To Swami, his father looked like a ____ (Fill in the blank)

Answer:

apparition.

A Hero Notes Question 4.

Why do you think Swami looked at his granny and his mother while following his father to the room?

Answer:

Swami looked at his granny and his mother because he hoped that they would come to his rescue and ask his father not to compel Swami to sleep in the office room.

A Hero Lesson Question And Answer Question 5.

“There might be scorpions before your law books”. Said Swami.

a) Had he seen them earlier? Or were there scorpions really?

Answer:

Swami might or might not have seen scorpions. From the story, we cannot make out whether he uses this as an excuse to escape sleeping in the office room or whether he had actually seen scorpions.

However, since he uses the word ‘might be’ while referring to scorpions behind the law books, we can conclude that he was just using scorpions as an excuse not to sleep in the office room.

b) Was it a trick to escape from his father? (Answer all the questions)

Answer:

Yes, absolutely it was a trick to escape from his father.

Share your Responses :

10th Class English A Hero Question Answer Question 1.

Swami wished that the tiger hadn’t spared the boy, which means ____ (Choose the right answer)

a) he didn’t want the boy to be alive.

b) he didn’t want the tiger to be alive

Answer:

a) he didn’t want the boy to be alive.

A Hero Lesson Summary In English Question 2.

As silence deepened in the room, what was Swami reminded of?

Answer:

As silence deepened in the room, Swami was reminded of all the stories of devils and ghosts he had heard from his chum Mani and the stories about Munisami’s father and his fourth class friend who had been carried off by a ghost.

10th English Notes Question 3.

Which place in the room did Swami think was safe compact and reassuring?

Answer:

Swami thought that it would be safe, compact, and reassuring under the bench.

A Hero Questions And Answers Question 4.

Swami touched ____ in the room instead of granny, (fill in the blank appropriately)

Answer:

The wooden leg of the bench

A Hero Chapter Questions And Answers Question 5.

Swami saw a moving creature in the room. It was ____ (Fill in the blank)

a) his shadow?

b) a scorpion?

c) a man?

Answer:

c) a man?

Share your Responses :

A Hero (Question Answers) Question 1.

Who cried, “Aiyo! Something has bitten me ?”

Answer:

The burglar cried, “Aiyo! Something has bitten me.

A Hero Lesson Question Answer Pdf Question 2.

Who did father, cook and a servant stumble upon?

Answer:

Father, cook, and a servant stumbled upon the burglar who lay amidst the furniture.

A Hero Lesson Summary In Kannada Question 3.

Why were congratulations showered on Swami?

Answer:

Congratulations were showered on Swami because unknowingly he helped to catch the most notorious house-breakers of the district.

SSLC English A Hero Lesson Notes Question 4.

Do you think Swami really wanted to join the police? If not, what did he want to be ?

Answer:

No, Swami, was not interested to join the police. He wanted to become an engine driver, railway guard or a bus conductor.

10th English A Hero Lesson Notes Question 5.

Did Swami muster up the courage to sleep alone after the burglar’s incident?

Answer:

No, Swami did not have so much courage to sleep alone even after the burglar’s incident.

A Hero Question Answer Question 6.

Who supported Swami? His mother or his granny.

Answer:

His mother supported him.

Think About The Text

English Notes Class 10 A Hero Question 1.

A report about a boy in the newspaper was an unexpected event in Swami’s life. Justify.

Answer:

Yes. If his father hadn’t read about the bravery of the village boy, he wouldn’t have started comparing Swami with him. He wouldn’t have challenged Swami to show his bravery. It is unfortunate for Swami that such a rare incident takes place and gets reported in the newspaper and catches the attention of Swami’s father. Yes, indeed, the report about the boy in the newspaper was an unexpected event in Swami’s life.

KSEEB English Solutions Class 10 Question 2.

Swami made a comment on the newspaper report. Was he right? How did his view differ from that of his father?

Answer:

Swami made a comment on the newspaper report. No, he was not right. But according to his belief, to face the tiger and fight with it means definitely he should be grown up. Swami strength and age are important to fight but Swami’s father’s view was different. To support his view, he gave an example such as ‘A man may have the strength of an elephant and yet be a coward if he doesn’t fight at all whereas another may have the strength of the straw but if he has courage he can do anything. Courage is everything, strength and age are not important.

A Hero 10th English Notes Pdf Question 3.

What desperate attempts did Swami make to escape from his father?

Answer:

When Swami’s father challenged him to sleep alone, Swami hoped that he was only joking. He mumbled ‘Yes’ weakly and tried to change the subject by talking about his cricket club. Swami, who

was terrified of sleeping alone, tried desperately to make his father change his mind. First of all he tried to change the topic by speaking to his father about the new bats and balls and the decision of his cricket club to admit even elders.

When his father kept to his decision, he tried to postpone the date by promising to sleep alone from the first of the coming month. Next, he pretended to have fallen asleep next to his granny, with the blanket covering his face. But, when his father pulled the blanket away and ordered him to sleep alone, as the last request, he pleaded with his father to allow him to sleep in the hall instead of the office room. But all these attempts turned out to be futile as his father remained resolute in his decision.

The Hero Questions And Answers Question 4.

Why did Swami conclude that his father's proposition was frightful?

Answer:

Swami had a habit of sleeping beside his granny. He was afraid of sleeping alone. In this condition, Swami concluded that his father's proposition (suggestion) was frightful.

English A Hero Question Answer Question 5.

As the night advanced, Swami felt that something terrible would happen to him. What would it be? How would it happen?

Answer:

When he was in the office-room at night, he remembered all the devil and ghost stories. His friend Mani had seen the devil in the banyan tree, Muniswami's father spat out blood, his thoughts linked like a chain. Swami thought that something terrible would happen to him. The ghost may come and carry him away. All these thoughts made him faint.

SSLC A Hero Lesson Question Answer Question 6.

There was absolute silence in the room. In spite of it, some noises reached Swami's ears. What were they?

Answer:

The different kinds of noises that reached his ears added to Swami's fear. In the stillness of the night, even usual sounds added to Swami's nervousness. The ticking of the clock, the rustle of trees, snoring sounds, and the humming sound of the night were the different sounds that reached Swami's ears in the stillness of the night.

10th English Notes A Hero Question 7.

Narrate Swami's dreadful experience when he was lying under the bench.

Answer:

Though Swami fell asleep when he slept under the bench, he was troubled by nightmares. He dreamt of a tiger chasing him, and his inability to escape as his feet were stuck to the ground and wouldn't move. The tiger was at his back and he could hear the claws scratching the ground. There was also a loud thud. Swami desperately tried to open his eyes, but couldn't. Finally, when he opened his eyes, he realized that he wasn't next to his granny. In this wakeful state, he was in for another horror. He could sense something moving down, and he thought it was the devil that had come to take him. In his desperation, he hugged it with all his strength and bit into it.

A Hero Lesson In English Notes Question 8.

How was Swami honoured by classmates, teachers, and the headmaster?.

Answer:

Swami became a hero in one night. The next day morning congratulations were showered on him. His classmates looked at him with great respect. His teachers patted his back and felt very proud of him. The Headmaster praised him as he was a real scout. Even the police were grateful to him for it.

10th English 1st Lesson A Hero Question Answer Question 9.

Why did the father want Swami to sleep alone in the office room?

Answer:

Father wanted Swami to sleep atone in the office-room to prove courage is everything. According to Swami, age and strength were more important in adventurous tasks. But in Swami's father's view, the strength and age were not so important, courage is all. To prove Swami had also courage, he should sleep alone in the office room.

10th Class English 1st Lesson Questions And Answers Question 10.

Who do you think was wiser, Swami or his father? Justify your preference.

Answer:

According to the prose Swami was wiser. Swami was afraid of darkness and loneliness when he saw something was moving he felt that his end had come. He assumed that the devil would pull him and tear him. So why should he wait ? As it came nearer he crawled out from the bench, hugged it and used his teeth like a mortal weapon. This shows at the time of emergency, he used his wisdom. By this act he helped to catch the notorious burglar. So we can justify that Swami was wiser.

A Hero Lesson In English 10th Class Question Answer Question 11.

Why did Swami feel relieved at the end?

Answer:

When their father returned home from the club that night, he asked his wife about Swami. Swami as usual slept beside his granny. Father thought that Swami slept before he could return home to avoid him. So he said that he was very clever. For that mother lost her temper and supported Swami and said that he can sleep wherever he likes, there is no need to take such a risk to his life again. Father mumbled that if Swami was spoiled there is no blame on his side, By hearing this conversation Swami felt relieved at the end.

KSEEB Solutions For Class 10 English A Hero Question 12.

Suppose you are Swami of the story. Write a brief letter to your friend describing how you helped to catch a burglar in your house.

Malgudi

10th April 2017

From,

Swami

Second form

Malgudi

To,

Raju

S/o Muniswamy

2nd Cross, Vidyanagar

Madurai.

My dear Raju,

How are you? I am fine and my parents too. My granny asks you often. How is your school and friends, I hope you are also fine there.

Last week my dad ordered me to sleep in his office-room alone. You know that till today I sleep beside my granny. I was afraid very much, but I had to obey my dad. I slept alone in his office-room. When I was asleep, I heard a sound, I got up and saw that there was something moving towards me. I hugged it and bite with all my strength. There was a cry, by hearing the cry, my dad, servant and family members came and caught the person. To our surprise he was a notorious burglar, like this I helped to catch the burglar though it was not my intention.

I am expecting your early reply, convey my regards to your family members.

Your loving friend

Swami

Hero Lesson Question And Answer Question 13.

Some words describing the characters of the story 'A Hero' are given in brackets. Put them in these columns appropriately. (Caring, protective, innocent, tricky, authoritative, disciplined, helpless, nervous)

Swami's father Mother Granny Swami

Answer:

Swami's father Mother Granny Swami disciplined

authoritative caring

protective innocent tricky

helpless

nervous

Enrich Your Vocabulary:

Task – 1: Homophones – Homophones are words that sound the same but have different meanings and different spellings. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words.

Hero Question Answer Question 1.

We had ___ many
apples to carry, (too/two)

Answer:
too.

Hero Lesson Question 2.

I ___ a horse at the Marina Beach, (road/rode)

Answer:
rode

A Hero 10th Lesson Question 3.

Did you have a ___ for lunch ? (pear/pair)

Answer:
pear

10th English Notes Pdf Question 4.

The books are over ___ on the shelf, (their / there)

Answer:
there

Task – 2: Fill in the blanks by choosing the appropriate word and complete the story.

This is a ___ (storey / story) told by a (night / knight). Once he received a letter. When he ___ (red / read) it ___ (through' / threw), he could not believe his own eyes. ___ (Far / For), it was written (buy / by) none other than the queen of the land. She asked him to meet her ___ (at / yet) a secret place. The knight was in a fix. But he thought ___ (of / off) a plan to tide over this problem. He ___ (vent/ went) to the meeting place, not alone, but along with his ___ (fair/fare) wife. Can you guess what happened then ?

Answer:

Story, knight, read, through, for, by, at, of went, fair..

Task – 3: Scramble the letters to form words. See the meaning clues in brackets.

Question 1.

a t r t e f l ___ (praise)

Answer:
flatter

Question 2.

b o u d t ___ (suspect)

Answer:
doubt

Question 3.

r a g t e d y ___ (unhappy ending)

Answer:
tragedy

Question 4.

r a g f e n m t ___ (a piece)

Ans
fragment

Question 5.

r a e l l ___ (careful)

Answer:
alert

Question 6.

c a c s r i y t ___ (short supply)

Answer:
scarcity

Question 7.

y m t s a t h p e i c ____ (not cruel)

Answer:

sympathetic

Listen And Comprehend

I once took part in a drama. I wanted to tell my co-actor ‘stars were twinkling, dogs were barking, and a thief broke the wall and took away the clock.’ But when I went on stage I said, ‘stars were barking, dogs were twinkling, and the thief broke the clock and took away the wall’. The audience had a great laugh. That day onwards I decided not to go on stage.

Answer the following:

Question 1.

Why do you think the audience, on hearing the dialogue, burst into laughter?

Answer:

Because the actor said the dialogue in the wrong way, it was like a joke, So they burst into laughter.

Question 2.

Try to repeat the words as delivered by the actor

Answer:

Do it practically, (for student).

Question 3.

If you had been the actor, how would you have said it?

Answer:

If I had been the actor, I would have practiced correctly and delivered the dialogue effectively.

Read And Respond

Task – 1: A man went to an astrologer.

Astrologer: Come to my child, your name is Suraj Khanna.

Khanna: Yes, indeed!

Astrologer: You have two sons and two daughters.

Khanna: How true!

Astrologer: You bought four kilos of sugar and five kilos of rice yesterday, and there are five members of your household remaining after your parents passed away.

Khanna: I am impressed. But can you tell me about my future?

Astrologer: Okay then. Come back with your horoscope booklet tomorrow. And, here, take your ration card back.

Answer the questions below :

Question 1.

Mr. Khanna was surprised at the astrologer’s prediction. What made him feel so?

Answer:

When Mr. Khanna went to an astrologer, the astrologer said the truth without asking any question. All statements were true. So he was very much impressed and felt surprised. But Mr. Khanna didn’t know that all the details were in his ration card not by the predictions of an astrologer.

Question 2.

Why wasn’t the astrologer able to predict Mr. Khanna’s future?

Answer:

The astrologer didn’t have Mr. Khanna’s horoscope so he was not able to predict his future.

Question 3.

In the conversation given above, who do you think has better common sense?

Answer:

In the above conversation, I think that the astrologer has a better common sense.

Task – 2: My brother, an Army doctor, was part of the UN peacekeeping mission in the Congo. At the end of the one year term, his Congolese commander awarded him a letter of merit that ended with “__ and he worked hard to restore normalcy to the region”.

Which word in the passage above gives the opposite meaning of what was meant to be said?

The word in the passage above which gives the opposite meaning is ‘Hardly’. It is written “__ and he worked hard to restore normalcy to the region” “hardly” here gives the meaning that the army doctor ‘almost not’ worked to restore normally in the region.

The correct word, therefore, should be 'hard', which means 'a great deal of effort'. The correct sentence, therefore, is ___ and he worked 'hard' to restore normalcy to the region".

Task – 3: Look at the cartoon. Interpret it orally with your partner. What is funny as shown in the cartoon?

[OBJ]

A man is seen entering the lift. He appears tired and sleepy. Instead of pressing the 'floor button' on the lift's console he is seen pressing the lift man's coat button.

Learn Grammar Through Communication

Use Of Modals :

Some sentences are given below:

a. Rewrite them beginning with 'the clue' given in brackets

b. Identify the language function. One example is given.

e.g: Is it all right if I sit here?

(Begin with 'could')

Function. Seeking permission.

Sentence is rewritten:

Could I sit here?

Question 1.

Please return my library books.

Being with 'will ___

Answer:

Function request.

Question 2.

The files are heavy I 'll carry them for you. Being with 'would' ___

Answer:

Function seeking permission.

Question 3.

That's your essay. Perhaps you have no objection if I see it. Being with 'May ___

Answer:

Function Seeking permission.

Question 4.

Let me switch on the fan, OK? Being with 'Do you ___

Answer:

Function seeking permission.

Question 5.

'Bring the books to my office' Being with 'would ___ Function order

Answers:

1. Will you return my library books?

2. Would you let me carry the files for you?

3. May I see your essay?

4. Do you want me to switch on the fan?

5. Would you bring the books to my office?

Task – 3 : With the help of a dictionary, find out what you can understand about the following words.

1. cheque and check as nouns.

cheque = A written order to a bank to pay money from a bank account to another person.

Check = a sudden stop

a restraint

a test of correctness/accuracy

a square [eq. on a draughtboard]

a pattern of squares

Check-in and check out = to record the arrival and departure.

2. hire and rent as verbs.

hire = to give or get the use of by paying money.

rent = to pay rent for things, house, building, shop etc.,

A Hero Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Question 1.

'A Hero' is the lesson written by

- a) R.K. Narayan
- b) K. R. Raja Rao
- c) T.R Kailasam
- d) Saki

Answer:

- a) R.K. Narayan

Question 2.

R.K. Narayan is widely considered to be the greatest English language

- a) Writer
- b) Poet
- c) Novelist
- d) Short story writer

Answer:

- c) Novelist

Question 3.

R.K. Narayan was nominated to

- a) Lok Sabha
- b) Rajya Sabha
- c) Vidhana Sabha
- d) Parliament

Answer:

- b) Rajya Sabha

Question 4.

R.K. Narayan's which novel was adapted for film

- a) The Bachelor of Arts
- b) The English Teacher
- c) A Hero
- d) The Guide

Answer:

- c) A Hero

Question 5.

R.K. Narayan's fictional South Indian Town was

- a) Bangalore
- b) Malgudi
- c) Chennai
- d) Madurai

Answer:

- b) Malgudi

Question 6.

For Swami, Events took a turn.

- a) imaginary
- b) expected
- c) unexpected
- d) usual

Answer:

- c) unexpected

Question 7.

The paragraph of the newspaper described

- a) tiger
- b) people
- c) bravery
- d) the fight, the boy had with the tiger

Answer:

- d) the fight, the boy had with the tiger

Question 8.

The opposite of courage is

- a) courageous
- b) discourage
- c) coward
- d) encourage

Answer:

- c) coward

Question 9.

The meaning of a proposition is

- a) suggestion
- b) position
- c) fight
- d) decision

Answer:

- a) suggestion

Question 10.

Chum means

- a) Classmate
- b) friend
- c) foe
- d) a good friend

Answer:

- d) a good friend

Question 11.

The one word for 'to make someone feel calm'.

- a) reassure
- b) rearrange
- c) recover
- d) reappear

Answer:

- a) reassure

Question 12.

The one word for 'to make someone suffer great mental pain'.

- a) rock
- b) rack
- c) rolled
- d) rescue

Answer:

- b) rack

Question 13.

Nightmare means

- a) male horse
- b) dream
- c) racehorse
- d) a frightening dream

Answer:

- d) a frightening dream

Question 14.

“Courage is everything; strength and age are not important”. This statement is according to

- a) Swami
- b) Swami’s father
- c) Author
- d) Swami’s granny

Answer:

- b) Swami’s father

Question 15.

Swami’s father sat gazing at the newspaper on his lap.

- a) happily
- b) casually
- c) gloomily
- d) sadly

Answer:

- b) casually

Question 16.

According to Swami’s father, how should Swami show his courage?

- a) Sleep alone tonight in his office room.
- b) Sleep beside his granny.
- c) Fight with the tiger
- d) Do brave acts.

Answer:

- a) Sleep alone tonight in his office room.

Question 17.

Swami disliked sleeping in his office room because

- a) There may be scorpions
- b) room was dusty
- c) he is not interested to prove his courage
- d) he had fear to sleep alone.

Answer:

- d) he had fear to sleep alone.

Question 18.

Swami had the habit of

- a) sleep beside his granny
- b) sleep beside his mother
- e) sleep with anybody
- d) sleep alone

Answer:

- a) sleep beside his granny

Question 19.

Swami bit by his teeth was

- a) robber
- b)Dacoit
- c) burglar
- d) most notorious house-breaker of the district.

Answer:

- d) most notorious house-breaker of the district.

Question 20.

Molly-coddle means

- a) spoiling someone
- b) treat someone very kindly and protect the person too much from anything unpleasant.
- c) treat someone affectionately
- d) Protect too much

Answer:

b) treat someone very kindly and protect the person too much from anything unpleasant.

Question 21.

What was the feeling of Swami at the end

a) feeling proud

b) happy

c) felt tremendously relieved

d) a hero

Answer:

c) felt tremendously relieved

II. Match the following :

S.noAB1.Sneera) an angry look or expression2.Scowlb) moved somewhere quietly and secretly3.Sternlyc) determination4.Slunkd) interruptedatonce5.Tenacitye) seriously and strictly6.Cut inf) speak in a very unkind way

Answer:

S.noAB1.Sneerf) speak in a very unkind way2.Scowla) an angry look or expression3.Sternlye) seriously and strictly4.Slunkb) moved some where quietly and secretly5.Tenacityc) determination6.Cut ind) interruptedatonce

2.

S.noAB1.Propositiona) Say something not clearly enough2.Mumbleb) ghost3.Gesticulationc) an object of ridicule4.Apparitiond) a frightening dream5.Laughingstocke) Suggestion6.Nightmaref) to make movements with hands and arms

Answer:

S.noAB1.Propositione) Suggestion2.Mumblea) Say something not clearly enough3.Gesticulationsf) to make movements with hands and arms4.Apparitionb) ghost5.Laughingstocke) an object of ridicule6.Nightmared) a frightening dream

Answer the following questions in a word or a sentence each:

Question 1.

When did events take an unexpected turn for Swami?

Answer:

Events took an unexpected turn for Swami when a report about the bravery of a village lad appeared in the newspaper.

Question 2.

Who did the village lad fight, according to the newspaper?

Answer:

A tiger.

Question 3.

What, according to Swami's father, was more important than strength or age?

Answer:

Courage.

Question 4.

How did Swami's father want Swami to prove that he had the courage?

Answer:

Swami's father wanted Swami to sleep alone that night in his office room.

Question 5.

Where did Swami sleep usually?

Answer:

Swami always slept beside his granny in the passage.

Question 6.

What class was Swami in?

Answer:

In the second form.

Question 7.

What did Swami's father intend to do if Swami did not sleep in his office that night?

Answer:

Swami's father intended to make Swami the laughing stock of his school if he did not sleep in his office that night.

Question 8.

On what condition did the father agree to leave the door open?

Answer:

Father agreed to leave the door open on the condition that Swami wouldn't roll up the bed and go to granny's side at night.

Question 9.

Why did Swami feel cut off from humanity?

Answer:

Swami, who was used to sleeping with his granny, felt cut off from humanity when his father forced him to sleep alone in his office.

Question 10.

Where had Mani seen the devil?

Answer:

Mani had seen the devil in the banyan tree at his street end.

Question 11.

What noises did Swami hear at night when he slept alone?

Answer:

Swami heard the ticking off the clock, rustle of trees, snoring sounds, and some vague night insects humming through the stillness.

Question 12.

Where did Swami sleep in his father's office?

Answer:

Under a bench.

Question 13.

Who did Swami fear would attack him?

Answer:

Swami feared that the devil would attack him.

Question 14.

How did the headmaster praise Swami?

Answer:

The headmaster praised Swami saying that he was a true scout.

Question 15.

Why did Swami go to sleep before his father returned from the club?

Answer:

'Swami did not want his father to make him sleep in his office again that night. So he went to sleep before his father returned from the club.

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

How does Swami react to the praise he receives?

Answer:

Swami does not reveal the truth to anyone and, when the police inspector suggests that he join the police force when he grows up, Swami does not reveal to him his desire to become an engine driver, a railway guard, or a bus conductor.

Question 2.

'Swami disputed the theory'. What was the theory?

OR

How was Swami's view about courage different from that of his father?

Answer:

Referring to the newspaper Swami's father said that a man may have the strength of an elephant and yet be a coward; whereas another may have the strength of a straw, but if he had the courage he could do anything. Courage was everything, strength and age were not important. But Swami disputed this theory saying even if he had the courage what could he do if a tiger were to attack him.

Question 3.

Where did Swami shift his bed too? Why?

Answer:

As Swami slept on the bench in his father's office, he remembered all the stories of devils and ghosts he had heard. He expected the devils to come at any moment and carry him away. He could hardly sleep. Suddenly the space under the bench seemed to him to be a much safer place. He got up hurriedly, spread his bed under the bench, and crouched there.

Question 4.

What made Swami attack the burglar first?

OR

In the darkness, Swami felt something was moving down. What did he do then?

Answer:

As Swami woke up from his nightmare, he sweated with fright. He heard some rustling and he stared into the darkness only to find something moving. He thought that the devil had come to tear him. He knew that his end was near and hence saw no point in waiting for it. As it came nearer, he crawled out from under the bench, hugged it with all his might, and bit into it. It was only later that he realized it was a burglar he had bitten and not the devil.

Question 5.

When was Swami greatly relieved? Why?

Answer:

After the burglar incident, Swami's mother intervened and told Swami's father that he shouldn't risk Swami's life by making him sleep alone. Swami's father mumbled that she could do what she liked and that he shouldn't be blamed later., Swami followed the conversation from under the blanket. He felt greatly relieved on realizing that his father had given up on him and would no longer compel him to sleep alone.

Question 6.

How did Swami try to change the subject when his father challenged him to sleep alone?

Answer:

When Swami's father challenged him to sleep alone, Swami hoped that he was only joking. He mumbled "Yes" weakly and tried to change the subject by talking about his cricket club. He said loudly and with a lot of enthusiasm that they were going to admit even elders in their club hereafter. He added that they were going to buy brand new bats and balls. But before he could continue any further, his father cut in and insisted that he sleep alone thereafter.

Question 7.

In which part of the office did Swami decide to sleep? Why did he select this place?

Answer:

Swami spread his bed under the bench in the office and crept in there to sleep. It seemed to be a much safer place, more compact and reassuring.

Question 8.

What made Swami's father, his cook and his servant rush up to the office room?

Answer:

When Swami sleeps in his father's office he has nightmares about the ghost and wakes up with a start. At the same time, Swami spots an intruder breaking into the office. Mistaking him for the ghost, Swami grabs the intruder's leg and bites it. The burglar is caught unawares and shouts loudly that something has bitten him. He tumbles and falls amidst the furniture. Hearing the commotion, Swami's father, his cook, and his servant rush up to the office room.

Question 9.

How did Swami's father react to the story in the newspaper? What did he want Swami to do?

Answer:

Swami's father did not have an iota of doubt about the bravery of the village lad who had fought a tiger. He was of the opinion that though the boy was small, since he was courageous, he could do anything. Unlike his father Swami was of the opinion that even if the boy had the courage, since he was small, he wouldn't stand a chance against a tiger. Since Swami had a different opinion, his father challenged him to prove that he had courage by sleeping alone that night in his office room.

Answer the following questions in 5-6/8-10 sentences each:

Question 1.

Why does Swami think that the idea that he should sleep in his father's office room is a frightful proposition? How does he try to change the subject? Why does he fail?

Answer:

Swami is not used to sleeping alone as he has always slept with his granny or mother. Secondly, the room that his father has asked him to sleep in is the office room where Swami feels cut off from humanity. Thirdly, Swami has heard stories of ghosts and believes in them. He tries to change the subject by assuring his father that he would start sleeping alone from the coming month. He fails in his attempts because of the tenacity of his father.

Question 2.

Why did everyone congratulate Swami?

OR

How did Swami become a hero?

Answer:

As Swami slept in his father's office, he was woken up by a rustling. In the darkness, he saw something moving towards him. He thought that the devil had come to get him. As it came nearer, he crawled out from under the bench, hugged it with all his might, and bit into it. The burglar, who had been mistaken for the devil, gave out a loud cry. In a moment his father, cook and a servant came there and overpowered him. The police were grateful to Swami because the burglar was one of the most notorious house-breakers of the district. Congratulations were showered on Swami and he became a hero overnight.

Question 3.

How was Swami successful in fulfilling the intention of his father to prove his courage?

Answer:

Swami proves his courage to his father, not by intention but by accident. When Swami is forced by his father to sleep in the office, Swami gets frightened of ghosts. He recollects the various stories he has heard about ghosts from his friends and is unable to sleep for a long time. Finally, he sleeps below the bench, finding the place more secure. However, he has nightmares about the ghost and wakes up with a start. At the same time, Swami spots an intruder breaking into the office.

Mistaking him for the ghost, Swami grabs the intruder's leg and bites hard, in desperation and self-defense. The intruder finds the pain unbearable and yells out in agony. The members of the house rush inside the office and catch the intruder. All of them think that it was a heroic attempt on Swami's part to catch the thief, and so, they have a lot of admiration for Swami. The police congratulate Swami and tell him that the intruder was a thief wanted by the police in a number of cases. Swami receives respect from his classmates and accolades from his teachers and headmaster and, more importantly, shows his courage to his father.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

“You think you are wiser than the newspaper?”

a) Who is being questioned here?

- b) Why is he being questioned?
- c) What report did the newspaper carry?

Answer:

- a) Swami is being questioned here.
- b) Swami argues with his father about a small boy who bravely fought a tiger. Swami is of the opinion that it wouldn't have been possible for a small boy to fight a tiger. At that time Swami's father questions Swami in this sarcastic manner.
- c) The newspaper carried a report about the bravery of a village lad who had come face-to-face with a tiger.

Question 2.

“It is disgraceful sleeping beside granny or mother like a baby.”

- a) Who is being called a baby?
- b) What was considered disgraceful?
- c) Why did the speaker think that it was disgraceful?

Answer:

- a) Swami is being called a baby.
- b) The father thought that it was disgraceful for someone in the second form to sleep beside his granny or mother.
- c) Swami was studying in the second form. Hence his father, the speaker, thought that it was disgraceful for him to sleep beside his granny or mother.

Question 3.

“If you do it, I'll make you the laughing stock of your school.”

- a) Who is the 'you' referred to?
- b) What did Swami's father expect him to do?
- c) What would he do if Swami did so?

Answer:

- a) The 'you' refers to Swami.
- b) Swami's father expected Swami to roll up the bed and go to granny's side at night.
- c) Swami's father threatened to tell all his friends at school that Swami was scared of sleeping in the dark and only slept next to his grandmother or mother.

Question 4.

“A frightful proposition, Swami thought”.

- a) What was the frightful proposition?**
- b) Why did Swami regard it as frightful?**
- c) What does ‘proposition’ mean in this context?**

Answer:

- a) The frightful proposition was that Swami’s father wanted him to sleep alone in the office room that night.**
- b) Swami was not used to sleeping alone. He used to sleep with his granny in the passage. Also, Swami felt that the office room where his father asked him to sleep, was cut off from humanity. He had also heard stories about ghosts. Hence Swami regarded it as frightful.**
- c) Suggestion.**

Question 5.

“Your office room is very dusty and there may be scorpions behind your law books”.

- a) When did Swami make this remark?**
- b) Why did Swami make this remark?**
- c) What does it reveal about his character?**

Answer:

- a) When his father forced him to sleep alone in his office room.**
- b) Swami made this remark because he wanted an excuse for not sleeping in the office room.**
- c) Swami was afraid to sleep alone. But he did not have the courage to tell this to his father.**

Question 6.

“Aiyo, something has bitten me”.

- a) Who said this? OR Who is the speaker?**
- b) Why had he been bitten?**
- c) How did the speaker suffer as a result of being bitten?**

Answer:

- a) The burglar.**
- b) Swami thought that it was the devil that had come to attack him. So, he bit him to save himself.**

c) The speaker, a burglar, shouted in pain. This brought the people of the house there leading to his arrest.

Question 7.

“Congratulations were showered on Swami the next day”.

- a) Why was Swami congratulated?
- b) Do you feel Swami deserves the praise? Give reason.

Answer:

- a) Swami had caught one of the notorious housebreakers of the district.
- b) No. Swami had bitten the burglar out of fright. He was not really a hero.

A HERO SUMMARY IN ENGLISH

‘A Hero’ was written by well known English Novelist R.K. Narayan. This is the extract taken by his familiar novel ‘Swami and his friends In this novel Swami was a boy of 11-12 years age. He was so simple, innocent, non – a courageous boy born in a middle-class South Indian family. His family members were his father, mother, granny, and little baby. His father was most disciplined and authoritative.

His mother and granny were more caring, protective, and he was obedient to his father. In this extract, once his father was reading the newspaper and called Swami and narrated the tiger s incident. The brave lad faced the tiger and flew up the tree until some people came and killed the tiger. Swami’s father asked Swami’s opinion about the incident. Swami said that facing the tiger alone means he might be a strong grown up man not a boy at all. Father said that courage is more important, strength and age are not so important. Swami did not agree, so father challenged him to show his courage by sleeping alone in his office- worn. The poor chap Swami was afraid and wished to change the topic, he started talking about the cricket club.

But his father was so determined and commanded .him to sleep alone in his office-room. To avoid this, Swami gave many excuses and he was not ready to sleep alone. Father said it was shame to sleep beside granny, or mother like a baby though he was grown up and studying in the second form. Father looked at his wife ‘ while talking, but she was not ready to take the abuses that she was spoiling her son. So she said that his granny was spoiling him. Swami s father kept quiet. At that time swami silently went towards his bed. Granny called him and asked why he didn’t want to hear a story on that day as usual. Swami wanted to escape from his father,so he threw himself on his bed and pulled the blanket over his face. Seeing this granny told that not to cover his face and asked whether he was really very sleepy. Swami got angry on his granny and pretended to have slept. Father came and made him to get up and asked him to follow.

Granny recommended Swami and questioned Swami's father why did he disturb him. Mother also supported her son and suggested to sleep him in the hall. But father didn't listen to their words. Swami was not ready to sleep in the office-room, he said it was very dusty and there may be scorpions behind the law books. But father did not agree and ordered him to sleep in the office-room only, otherwise, he would make him laughing stock at school, He was afraid of darkness so he asked permission to have the burning lamp. For this also father; didn't agree because he wanted Swami to learn not to be afraid of darkness.

Finally, Swami requested to leave the office – room door open. For that father agreed. There was no way to avoid his father. So Swami went to office-room. While he was in the room he hated the news printed in the newspaper about the tiger and wished that the tiger had not spared the boy. As the night advanced and the silence deepened his heartbeat fastened. He remembered the scary devil and ghost stories that he had heard. He was very much afraid to be alone in the room. He could hear all types of sounds like ticking off the clock, rustle of trees, snoring sounds, etc., in the calmness of night very clearly.

Every moment in his thought the devils would come and carry him away. He was full of fear, he didn't know what to do? He got up and spread his bed under the bench and crouched there. He shut his eyes tight and fell asleep. He was racked with nightmares in his sleep. Nightmares continued a tiger was chasing him, the tiger was at his back, the fear of tiger that it may catch him continued. He groaned in despair.

After some time by much effort he opened his eyes, he touched the wooden leg of the bench assuming that granny was at his side. He sweated with fear. At that time Swami saw something moving, he thought his end had come, why should he wait? As it came nearer, he hugged it and bite it with all his strength like a mortal weapon. The man (burglar) screamed with pain and fell amidst of furniture.

By hearing the cry of a man, father, cook and a servant came. All three of them caught the burglar. This burglar was most notorious housebreakers of the district and he was a challenge for police. Next day congratulations were showered on Swami. His classmates looked at him with great respect. His teachers and headmaster were also proud of him. Swami became a Hero in one night and all were happy. At night father asked where is Swami ? for that mother replied that he already slept in his usual place. Mother also continued her talk and informed that let him sleep where he likes, need not risk his life again. Father mumbled that if Swami was spoiled then there is no blame from his side. Swami heard the whole conversation of his parents and felt relieved that his father was giving him up at last.

Get Grandma Climbs a Tree Questions and Answers Pdf, Notes, Summary Class 10 English Karnataka State Board Solutions Study Material to score good marks in the exam. Various chapters with subtopics are explained clearly in KSEEB Class 10 English Solutions Material. All the Karnataka Secondary Education Examination Board Class 10 English Questions, answers along with the explanations are provided by the subject experts. Students can easily learn Karnataka Class 10 Chapter wise English with the help of the step by step guide provided on our site. Learn all the KSEEB Class 10 English concepts to attempt the exam with more confidence. Read all the concepts of Karnataka Board Solutions for Class 10 English Poetry Chapter 1 Grandma Climbs a Tree.

GRANDMA CLIMBS A TREE

Grandma Climbs a Tree Poem Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

Grandma Climbs A Tree Notes Question 1.

The speaker in the poem does not call his grandmother ‘childish’, what else was she according to him? Why does he consider her to be so? (line 1-4)

Answer:

The speaker in the poem does not call his grandmother ‘childish’. According to him, she was ‘genius’ because she could climb a tree whether the tree was high or big and spreading. She was skilful and she can climb it very quickly. She could climb the tree tired less even at the age of sixty-two. She had this gift and enjoying it though it was unusual. So the speaker considered her to be a genius.

Grandma Climbs A Tree Question 2.

Grandma had been in the habit of climbing trees for a very long period. Identify the lines that suggest this. “Ever since childhood, she’d had this.

Answer:

gift”.... this line suggests that the grandma had been in the habit of climbing trees for a very long period.

Grandma Climbs A Tree Question Answer Question 3.

Look at line 7 and 8 ‘She would be told ’ who do you think would tell her so?

Answer:

I think that the well-wishers, family members or neighbours would tell her so.

Grandma Climbs A Tree Questions And Answers Question 4.

Do you find anything odd in the reply given by the grandma? If so, why do you think it is odd? (line 10-11)

Answer:

We can’t say that grandma’s reply is odd. We can instead say that her reply shows her bohemian (having irregular habits and showing disregard for social conventions) spirit. She boldly declares that if climbing trees in old age is considered disgraceful, she would choose to be disgraceful. Her reply shows her freedom of spirit.

Grandma Climbs A Tree Poem Question 5.

Others had feared that granny would fall from a tree one day or the other. Did this happen? Or did something else happen? (line 15-18)

Answer:

Yes, it had happened. One day when others were in town she had a terrible fall. But the effect of this was the opposite. Instead of fearing, the grandma climbed the tree and made up her mind that she wouldn't come down.

Grandma Climbs A Tree Questions And Answers Question 6.

What had the doctor recommended? What was the reaction of the kids to this advice?

Answer:

The doctor recommended her to stay on the bed for a week. The kids sighed with relief and tucked her-up well to the bed, it means the kids looked after her and wished that she would stay in bed and be out of trouble.

Grandma Climbs A Tree Poem Pdf Question 7.

Quote the lines which suggest how wholeheartedly granny enjoyed climbing a tree.

Answer:

The lines which suggest that Granny wholeheartedly enjoyed climbing a tree were as follows:

“When last she climbed a tree she was sixty- two”.

“For being happier in a tree than in a lift”

“She climbed a tree and couldn't come down”.

Grandma Climbs A Tree Pdf Question 8.

‘My dad knew his duties’. What did he think his duty was?

Answer:

The speaker's dad knew his duties mean he agreed to fulfill his mother's desire immediately because he was obedient and loved his mother.

10th English Grandma Climbs A Tree Notes Question 9.

Look at the picture given below the title. Quote the lines that might have guided the artist to draw.

Answer:

The lines that might have guided the artist to draw are “Made her a tree-house with windows and a door.

“So granny moved up

“She sits there in state upholding her right to reside in a tree.”

Kseeb Solutions For Class 10 English Grandma Climbs A Tree Question 2.

‘Growing old gracefully’ is an expression used in the poem. Discuss with your partner whether what the grandma was doing was graceful or otherwise.

Answer:

What is being graceful and what is not being graceful is subjective. According to traditional ideas, girls are supposed to be graceful and they are not supposed to climb trees in a manly or disgraceful manner. But, these ideas needn’t be taken as the ultimate truth. Grandma did what her heart prompted her to do and while doing what she did, she did not hurt anyone. So, we will not be fair in our judgment of her action if we consider it disgraceful.

Grandma Climbs A Tree Question Answers Question 3.

Both the narrator (speaker in the poem) and his father were very considerate towards Grandma. Substantiate the statement with textual support.

Answer:

The narrator admires his grandma and calls her a genius. When she boldly chooses to be disgraceful, he readily supports her. When the doctor advises rest for grandma, he lovingly tucks her up in bed. However, he feels sorry for the grandma as he knows that being confined to bed is torture for grandma. All these details show how much the narrator loves his grandma. His father too is equally considerate. When grandma demands a house on the treetop, he readily agrees and builds one on the treetop with the help of his son. After the house is built, every day, the narrator climbs the tree to give Grandma company over a glass of sherry.

B. Rhyming Words

Question 1. Have a close look at the rhyme- scheme. Write at least 5 pairs of rhyming words. e.g. said – bed.

Answer:

1) gift – lift

2) told – old

3) agree – tree

4) ail – fall

5) right – tonight

Grandma Climbs A Tree Poem Questions And Answers Question 2.

“It was like a brief season”. Name the figure of speech in the sentence. What are the two things compared? Explain.

Answer:

The figure of speech is a simile. The granny was confined in her bedroom and tucked up to her bed was compared as a brief season in hell.

10th English Grandma Climbs A Tree Question Answer Question 3.

‘For being happier in a tree than in a lift’. What is suggested through this line? Exchange your views with your partner.

Answer:

Here the poet suggested or explained that the granny enjoyed to sit in a tree and she felt very uncomfortable and sad if she were in life.

English Grandma Climbs A Tree Notes Question 4.

“There was not a tree, she hadn’t been up’ is an expression. Rewrite the above sentence without using ‘not’ (note: the meaning should be the same) Give some more examples from outside the text to illustrate the effective use of double negatives.

Answer:

There were no trees left, that grandma hadn’t climbed.

Grandma Climbs a Tree Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Grandma Climbs A Tree Question 1.

Grandma Climbs a Tree is a poem written by

- a) Ruskin Bond
- b) Joyce Armor
- c) R.K. Narayan
- d) T.R Kailasam

Answer:

- a) Ruskin Bond

Grandma Climbs A Tree Question And Answer Question 2.

Ruskin Bond is an

- a) Englishman
- b) Author
- c) Indian poet
- d) English

Answer:

c) Indian poet

Grandma Climbs A Tree Poem By Ruskin Bond In English Question 3.

Grandma was a genius because

- a) She was skillful**
- b) She could climb a tree**
- c) She was good**
- d) She loved trees**

Answer:

b) She could climb a tree

Grandma Climbs A Tree Lesson Notes Question 4.

in a trice means

- a) Three times**
- b) try very hard**
- c) three colors**
- d) very quickly**

Answer:

d) very quickly

Grandma Climbs A Tree Poem Notes Question 5.

Grandma Climbed a tree last time when she was

- a) Sixty-two**
- b) Childhood**
- c) Six years old**
- d) last year**

Answer:

a) Sixty-two

10th English Notes Grandma Climbs A Tree Question 6.

Usually climbing trees should stop when one

- a) grew taller
- b) grew old
- c) grew stronger
- d) grew weak

Answer:

- b) grew old

Grandma Climbs A Tree Solutions Question 7.

For in all the garden there wasn't __

- a) a house
- b) a pool
- c) a tree
- d) a swing

Answer:

- c) a tree

Grandma Climbs A Tree Question Answer Question 8.

She learned to climb a tree from

- a) a trainee
- b) a coach
- c) a father
- d) a loving brother

Answer:

- d) a loving brother

Grandma Climbs A Tree Notes English Question 9.

One day she'd have

- a) a terrible fall
- b) a fear
- c) a fruit
- d) a call

Answer:

a) a terrible fall

Grandma Climbs A Tree Poem Question 10.

The doctor strongly recommended

a) a quiet relief

b) a quiet medicine

c) a quiet diet

d) a quiet week in bed.

Answer:

d) a quiet week in bed.

10th Grandma Climbs A Tree Notes Question 11.

Grandma wanted a house

a) in a treetop

b) on the ground

c) besides the river

d) at the seashore

Answer:

a) in a treetop

Question 12.

She called for

a) her mother

b) her brother

c) her father

d) her son

Answer:

d) her son

10th Class Grandma Climbs A Tree Question 13.

The opposite of gracefully

- a) graceless
- b) disgracefully
- c) grace
- d) not gracefully

Answer:

- b) disgracefully

Grandma Climbs A Tree Points Question 14.

Grandma learned to climb the tree when she was

- a) ten
- b) child
- c) six
- d) sixty-two

Answer:

- d) sixty-two

II. Match the following :

Answer:

- 1 – c
- 2 – a
- 3 – g
- 4 – b
- 5 – f
- 6 – d

Answer the following questions in a word or a sentence each:

Grandma Climbs A Tree Questions And Answers Class 8 Question 1.

Why does the poet consider his grandmother a genius?

Answer:

The poet considers his grandmother a genius because she could climb any tree however tall or wide even at the age of sixty-two.

Grandma Climbs A Tree Full Poem In English Question 2.

How old was a grandmother when she last climbed a tree?

Answer:

Sixty-two.

The Grandma Climbs A Tree Question 3.

From whom did grandmother learn climbing trees?

Answer:

Grandmother learned climbing trees from her brother.

Grandma Climbs A Tree Short Summary In English Question 4.

What was the outcome expected of grandma climbing trees?

Answer:

It was expected that one day grandma would have a terrible fall.

Question 5.

What is grandma's confinement to her bedroom compared to?

Answer:

Grandma's confinement to her bedroom for a week is compared to a brief season in hell.

Question 6.

What did grandmother demand from the poet's father?

OR

What did grandma ask for as soon as she was better?

Answer:

She demanded a treetop house.

Question 7.

What does the poet call his grandmother?

Answer:

The poet calls his grandmother a genius.

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

A genius is someone with exceptional ability. What was grandma's ability? What was exceptional about it?

Answer:

Grandma's special ability was her passion for climbing trees. What was surprising was that she could climb any tree however tall or wide.

Question 2.

Why did her family worry about her tree-climbing when she was growing old?

Answer:

Naturally, the members of the family were worried about the well-being of Grandma. They were worried that she would fall and get hurt. But strangely, it was not the problem of falling. It was a stranger. Grandma, who had climbed a tree, was not able to come down and had to be rescued by others.

Question 3.

What kind of trees could grandma climb?

Answer:

Grandma could climb all kinds of trees. Even if the tree had grown to be huge with its branches spreading wide or high, grandma could climb the tree quickly.

Question 4.

'The outcome was different'. What was the outcome? What was it different from and in what way? What was the immediate result of that outcome?

Answer:

The family members were worried that one day grandma would have a terrible fall. But the outcome was different. She climbed a tree one day and couldn't come down. The immediate result of this was that the doctor recommended a quiet week in bed for grandma.

Question 5.

What was unusual in the reply given by the grandma?

Answer:

Grandma was very childish in her reply. She said that she would grow old disgracefully.

Question 6.

The speaker in the poem does not call his grandmother 'childish'. What else was she, according to him? Why does he consider her to be so?

Answer:

The speaker does not call his grandma childish. He calls her a genius because he admires her ability to climb trees of all sizes. He can understand her passion for climbing trees and does not consider it disgraceful.

Question 7.

What qualities of grandma do you appreciate?

Answer:

The grandma's ability to live life according to the dictates of her heart is appreciable. She was totally unconventional in her approach to life and didn't go by what society considered right or wrong. She was a genius in climbing trees and had climbed a tree when she was sixty-two.

Answer the following questions in 8-10 sentences:

Question 1.

Write in your own words the substance of the poem 'Grandma Climbs a Tree'.

Answer:

Refer to the summary.

Question 2.

What qualities of grandma do you appreciate?

Answer:

Ruskin Bond projects his grandma as a feisty old lady, who could easily give the youngsters a run for their money. She followed the dictates of her heart and was unconventional in her ways. She was the happiest on the trees and even at the age of 62 climbed them. It is clear that she did not want to go to her grave with any of her desires unfulfilled. She should be taken as a model by us because quite often we don't know what would give us happiness, and some other time even if we know, we lack either the conviction or the confidence to pursue our dreams.

Grandma is a metaphor for free will, and through her projection, Ruskin Bond breaks the myth that women and old people cannot climb trees. Here we have a fiery old woman not only climbing trees but also literally living on trees in great style.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

"The outcome was different."

- a) The 'outcome' of what is being referred to here?
- b) What was the outcome expected?
- c) What was the outcome that occurred?

Answer:

- a) The outcome of grandmother climbing a tree is being referred to here.
- b) It was expected that one day she would have a terrible fall. But things turned out different.
- c) She climbed a tree one day, and couldn't come down.

Question 2.

My grandmother was a genius.

- a) Whose grandmother is considered a genius?
- b) Why does the poet consider her a genius?
- c) How old was she when she last climbed a tree?

Answer:

- a) The poet Ruskin Bond's grandmother is considered a genius.
- b) The poet calls her a genius because she could climb all kinds of trees, whether tall or wide, swiftly.
- c) She was sixty-two when she last climbed a tree.

Question 3.

For her, it was like a brief season in hell.

Confined to her bedroom, while every breeze Whispered of summer and dancing leaves.

- a) What was like a brief season in hell?
- b) Why was grandma confined to her bed?
- c) Explain the two things compared here. What is the figure of speech?

Answer:

- a) Being confined to bed for a week was like a brief season in hell for grandma.
- b) Grandma climbed a tree one day and couldn't come down. After she was rescued, the doctor took her temperature and recommended a quiet week in bed.
- c) Granny's forced rest on bed, without being allowed to go out and climb a tree is compared to a short stay in hell. It would be so torturous for granny that it is being compared with the unpleasantness of hell. The figure of speech is single.

Question 4.

She sat up and said, "I'll lie here no longer".

- a) Who does T refer to?

- b) Why was the speaker forced to lie down?
- c) Why didn't she want to lie there no longer?

Answer:

- a) 'I' refers to grandma.
- b) Grandma, after having climbed a tree, was unable to climb down. After she was rescued, the doctor took granny's temperature and strongly recommended her a quiet week in bed.
- c) She had resisted the temptation to climb trees for a week and could no longer do so.

Question 5.

"I'll start work tonight".

- a) Who planned to start the work?
- b) What was the work?
- c) Why was he doing it?

Answer:

- a) The poet's father.
- b) The work was to build a house in a treetop.
- c) He wanted to do it to fulfill his mother's wish to live on a tree.

GRANDMA CLIMBS A TREE POEM SUMMARY IN ENGLISH

"Grandma Climbs a Tree" is a poem written by Ruskin Bond. The Indian council has recognized him as the pioneer of the growth of children's literature in India. He has written more than 30 books for children. In this poem, we can see Bond's great ability to enjoy unusual events and activities.

Commonly unusual things are seeds for Humour. Climbing a tree by grandma is one of the unusual anecdotes. This is the poem, as the title suggests, how an old woman keeps the childish habits and desires. The speaker here explained his grandma's habit. He called her genius because she could climb a tree in that old age. The tree may be high or spreading, she would have to climb.

Even at the age of 62, she climbed a tree, she had the capacity of climbing the tree very quickly. She has this skill. She is fond of climbing a tree since her childhood. She had this gift and enjoying a lot. She feels happy to climb a tree. She had more pleasure in a tree than in a lift. As years went on and grandma became old and her well-wishers suggest that she must stop trees. Whenever the people grow old they can give up children's deeds and lead graceful life. Grandma laughed and said that she will grow disgracefully, what is in that but she can assure that she can do it better.

Others would agree to her. What can she do in a better way? Luckily there was no tree in their garden. Grandma learned to climb a tree from her loving brother when she was six years. All old people feared that if she 'tree, one day or the other, some danger would happen to her. This is the fear of her beloveds. Once the family members were out of town, grandma had a terrible fall. How did it

happen? Don't know. But the result was (utterly) completely different. Instead of "a threat, she climbed a tree and could not come down.

After the rescue, the Doctor suggested that she had to take complete bed rest for one week. There was no major harm to her. Family members sighed with relief. When grandma was on the bed, it was like a little hell. Her bedroom is like a prison and she felt that she is imprisoned in her room. During her rest period when she was in her room she can feel the breeze and whisper of dancing leaves in the summer.

Grandma peacefully waited till she became stronger, afterwards, she said to her son that she could not lie on the bed any longer and without hesitating, she ordered that she wanted a house on the treetop. Her son was obedient to his mother and obeyed her order. Immediately he started the work with the help of his son who was an expert. They finished their work and made her a little, beautiful house on the treetop. The house had windows and a door. After that grandma lived in that house and her grandson could climb the tree every day to give glasses and tray. The grandson supplied food and wine to her. She sits there and eats and drinks with her grandson, like this she can claim her right to live on a tree.

THERE'S A GIRL BY THE TRACKS!

THERE'S A GIRL BY THE TRACKS! QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS, NOTES, SUMMARY

Whether you want to become an expert in English or to get good marks in the exam, you have one and only solution is practicing with Karnataka Class 10 English Chapter wise Solutions. Strengthen your weakness by learning the KSEEB Class 10 English on our site. You can learn directly online on our website or learn off line by downloading Karnataka Class 10 English Chapter wise material. Save your time and read Karnataka Class 10 English Subject at your comfort level.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Question 1.

"It's a regular scene". What was regular about the scene? (Para -1)

Answer:

In a most populated metropolis like Mumbai the commuters (one who travels to the workplace daily) were more. Evening times they are hurried to go back home, so they rushed to board the trains. If they missed the particular train, they are in trouble and get late to reach their home. So it is a regular scene for those people. No one has time to think about others.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Notes Question 2.

"Roma Talrej a tried to settle into a corner near the door in the train", was she right in doing this? What would you have done, if you were there?

Answer:

No, it's always better to avoid standing near the door. If I were in her place, the first thing I would try to do would be to move into the compartment, away from the door. However, it's easier said than

done. The trains are so jam-packed that movement is almost impossible and quite often we expose ourselves to grave danger.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Question And Answers Question 3.

“There's a girl by the tracks”, the voices cried out.

Answer:

The voices came from the passengers who stood at the door Of the train which was coming from the opposite direction.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Lesson Question And Answers Question 4.

Baleshwar was impulsive in taking a decision because “there is a girl by tracks!”

(Fill in the blank appropriately), (para-3)

There Is A Girl By The Tracks Question 5.

The dictionary says ‘callous’ means ‘unconcerned’. In this situation, who do you think was ‘callous’ towards the accident?

Answer:

The people who saw the scene that Roma had Men on the tracks. Though they had seen, they did not volunteer to help her. They were considered as callous towards the accident.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Pdf Question 6.

‘Baleshwar rushed to help the girl’. His movement has been described with verbs like ‘shoved’. Identify two more such verbs/ verbal phrases in paragraph (5).

Answer:

The two more verbal phrases are

1) Jumped off and

2) landed on

Share your Responses

There's A Girl By The Tracks Question Answer Pdf Question 1.

Where did Baleshwar find Roma at last?

Answer:

At last Baleshwar found Roma by the side of the tracks between the two stations approximately five kilometers apart.

There Is A Girl By The Tracks Notes Question 2.

“Behenji, aap teek hai ?” But there was no response and no help in sight. Why was it so? Read paragraph 6 and answer.

Answer:

Roma had fallen by the railway track while commuting by an electric train and Baleshwar also had jumped off a still-moving train after pulling the chain. Both the trains had moved on with the rest of the passengers as if nothing untoward had happened. Since it was the railway tracks somewhere between two stations which were five kilometers apart in Thane district, there weren't people around and there was no help in sight. Roma couldn't answer the question as she had blacked out after the fall because of a gash in the head.

There's Girl By The Tracks Question Answer Question 3.

Fill in the table with appropriate details.

Answer:

Name	Age	Education	State they belong to	Profession	Reasons for boarding the train
Roma	21 years	Graduate	Maharashtra	Working in call centre	back to home
Baleshwar Mishra	20 years	High School drop out	Uttar Pradesh (U.P)	Un employed	back to home

Share your Responses :

There's A Girl By The Tracks Lesson Notes Question 1.

Who volunteered to help Baleshwar?

Answer:

The middle-aged tempo-truck driver who spoke Gujarati volunteered to help Baleshwar.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Notes Pdf Question 2.

“Roma stirred and her eyes fluttered open”. What could have made her react so?

Answer:

Roma was shifted to back of the tempo truck with Baleshwar, she lay on the seat. When the vehicle moved unsteadily it made her stir and her eyes fluttered open.

There's Girl By The Tracks (Question Answer) Question 3.

Some details of Roma's brother are given in Paragraph 14. Read and fill in the columns appropriately.

Answer:

Name Job Place Vehicle

Dinesh Talreja Marketing job Ulhasnagr motorcycle

Share your Responses:

There's A Girl By The Tracks Question And Answer Question 1.

“Oh, I couldn't thank him”, Balesh-war thought. Who do you think he couldn't thank ?

Answer:

Baleshwar couldn't thank the tempo truck driver because he was busy to admit Roma to the hospital and spoke with Dr. Anil Agarwal.

The Girl By The Tracks Notes Question 2.

Why did Baleshwar revisit the spot where Roma had fallen?

Answer:

Baleshwar revisited the spot to find out Roma's belongings. Dinesh told him that her mobile phone and handbag were missing.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Question Answer Question 3.

Baleshwar got some assurance from a railway employee.

Answer:

When he was looking for her belongings at the spot, where Roma had fallen a railway employee assured that Roma's belongings had been found already found.

There's A Girl By The Tracks (Important Questions) Question 4.

Roma said, “I think it's astonishing”. What was astonishing?

Answer:

The manner in which she had been rescued was astonishing. According to Roma, it was astonishing because a stranger would jump off a train and risk his life for her. She was also a stranger to him.

Think About The Text

A Girl By The Tracks Notes Question 1.

Some incidents relating to Roma Talreja are given below. Put them in the right order.

- a. Roma lost her foothold.
- b. The train hurtled ahead.
- c. Roma was thrown out of the coach
- d. Roma was jumped, between two women.
- e. Roma panicked.

Ans :

- b
- d
- a
- e
- c

Kseeb Solutions For Class 10 English Question 2.

Baleshwar jumped into action to save the girl. His actions in doing so are given in a jumbled manner. Set them in the right sequence, as in the text.

- a. Baleshwar crossed the track
- b. He carried the girl.
- c. He saw the girl bleeding
- d. He requested motorists to help him
- e. He prayed silently.

Ans:

- c
- e
- b
- a
- d

There's A Girl By The Tracks 10th Standard English Notes Question 3.

Write briefly about the personal details such as qualification and profession of Roma Talreja and Baleshwar Mishra after discussion with your classmates.

Answer:

Roma Talreja is 21 years old, B.Com., graduate from Pune. She is working as a call centre executive for two years. She loved her job, talking and connecting to customers and making new friends. She is feeling happy and active. Baleshwar Mishra is 21 years old, high school drops out. He is tall and thin youngster from Mirzapur, UP, he is unemployed recently came to Mumbai. In Mumbai, he is living with his two elder brothers and hunting a job, but his effort is not fruitful.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Lesson Pdf Question 4.

“Take the girl to Airoli”, suggested the cop. But Baleshwar disagreed. Why did he do so?

Answer:

Airoli was at least 10 kilometers away and Baleshwar knew of a small hospital at a closer place. Moreover, Roma, who was bleeding, was unconscious and Baleshwar must have considered each minute crucial. So he disagreed with the suggestion given by the cop.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Full Lesson Question 5.

Some incidents mentioned in paragraph 12 are given in a jumbled order below. Arrange them sequentially,

- a. The on-duty physician advised Baleshwar to take Roma to a nearby hospital.**
- b. Baleshwar and Roma Telreja arrived at a small hospital.**
- c. The nurses in the hospital helped Baleshwar to take the young woman in.**
- d. The hospital lacked the facility and personnel to treat Roma.**

Answer:

b

c

d

a

There's A Girl By The Tracks Question Answers Question 6.

Was Baleshwar right in asking Roma her name while she lay in a critical condition? Justify your answer.

Answer:

Yes, he had to know who she was so that he could inform her near ones. He had done his best. But there were other things which only family members could decide on. So it was imperative that Baleshwar make Roma talk to get the required piece of information.

There Is A Girl By The Tracks Lesson Notes Question 7.

“Baleshwar had a good memory”. Do you agree with this ? Give examples to support your view.

Answer:

Yes, I agree with this, when Baleshwar asked her whom should he inform, for that Roma said her brother Dinesh and his phone number. There is no time to write, he memorized that number and called him. This incident shows that Baleshwar had a good memory.

10th Class English There’s A Girl By The Tracks Notes Question 8.

The doctor at the Divine Multi-Speciality hospital admitted Roma without any formalities. What made him do so ?

Answer:

On seeing the head injury, the doctor must have decided that the girl needed immediate attention. Though the injury turned out to be less serious than what it was feared to be, there was no way for the doctor to know that before an examination. Moreover, irrespective of the extent of the injury, the fact remained that Roma had been bleeding for quite some time. So the doctor, who did not stand on formalities, but cared for human beings, admitted Roma without any formalities so that immediate treatment could be given. If we have more doctors like the doctor at the Divine Multi-Speciality Hospital, many lives can be saved.

There’s A Girl By The Tracks English Notes Question 9.

If Baleshwar had not come forward to help Roma, what would have happened to her?

Answer:

There are many possibilities. The worst possibility is that Roma could have bled to death even though the head injury was not severe, with no one either spotting Roma or everyone being indifferent to Roma. A more optimistic viewpoint at the possibility of another passer-by helping Roma and Roma being saved by the kind gesture of that passer-by. However, there is also the possibility of Roma being handicapped or paralyzed for life, even if she were to get help because of the time lapse between the accident and the time of treatment.

There Is A Girl By The Tracks Question And Answers Question 10.

How did the truck driver help Baleshwar?

Answer:

The truck driver was also a selfless, kind-hearted man. He helped Baleshwar in taking Roma to a nearby hospital. When it was known that Roma had to be taken to a bigger hospital, he continued to

help Baleshwar. He lent Baleshwar his cell phone so that Roma's people could be informed. After there was no more need of his help, he quietly moved away without waiting for words of gratitude or appreciation. It's people like Baleshwar and the driver who make us believe in the goodness of human beings.

There A Girl By The Tracks Question 11.

Baleshwar felt that the people of Mumbai were afraid. What were they afraid of, according to his opinion?

Answer:

People of Mumbai were afraid of getting involved. They were afraid that if they helped accident victims, they would get trapped in the courts or with the police.

A Girl By The Track Question 12.

The Dalai Lama says, "Love and Compassion are the true religions to me. But to develop this, we do not need to believe in any religion". Does this relate to the lesson "There is a Girl by the Tracks"? How? Discuss it with your friends.

Answer:

Yes, Dalai Lama's sayings are related to this lesson. Here Baleshwar didn't know the religion of Roma when he decided to help her. Really to love and show concern to the people do not depend on religion. Here Baleshwar had real love, compassion, and concern about human beings. This is the true religion. In this aspect, it relates to Dalai Lama's sayings.

ENRICH YOUR VOCABULARY:

Task -1: Verbs related to different actions are given below. Pick them and put them in their respective columns. Note that some words may fit into more than, one column. Refer to a dictionary if necessary.

tell, grab, pray, squeeze, glance, hurtle, observe, chat, snatch, plead, peep, utter, had, beg, shove, talk, clutch, implore, rush, stare, hold, appeal, dash, gaze, articulate, run

Words related to

Observing	Moving	Holding	Speaking	Requesting
-----------	--------	---------	----------	------------

1. observe	1. hurtle	1.squeeze	1. tell	1. pray
------------	-----------	-----------	---------	---------

2. stare	2. rush	2. snatch	2. chat	2. plead
----------	---------	-----------	---------	----------

3. glance	3.shove	3. hold	3. talk	3. implore
-----------	---------	---------	---------	------------

4- gaze 4. dash 4. clutch 4. utter 4. beg

5. peep 5. run 5. had 5. articulate 5. appeal

6. grab

Task – 2: Use the above words meaningfully to fill in the blanks in the following sentences. You can change the form of the word if required. One example is given.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Question 1.

Five of us ___ ourselves into the back seats.

Answer:

squeezed

10th English Lesson There's A Girl By The Tracks Question 2.

English people love to ___ about the weather.

Answer:

talk

There's A Girl By The Tracks Summary In English Question 3.

Arun ___ Shaila closely and wiped away her tears

Answer:

held

The Girl By The Tracks Question Answer Question 4.

I haven't ___ to Steve about all this.

Answer:

talked

There Is A Girl By The Track Question 5.

All club members have been ___ to attend the annual meeting.

Answer:

appealed

There Is Girl By The Tracks Question 6.

Sudha ___ over her shoulder.

Answer:

Stared

There's A Girl By The Tracks 10th Standard English Question 7.

The thief has ___ away her purse and ran.

Answer:

snatched

There's A Girl By The Tracks Lesson Extracts Question 8.

Would you mind going to __ the kids from school?

Answer:

bring

10th Standard Lesson There's A Girl By The Tracks Question 9.

Veena __ at me in disbelief.

Answer:

gazed

There's A Girl By The Tracks Question Answer Question 10.

Many people are unable to ___ the unhappiness they feel.

Answer:

utter

Task – 3: A paragraph is given below based on the text. Some words are underlined. Substitute these words with the phrases and idioms making use of the clues given in brackets with necessary changes or additions.

Baleshwar Mishra was a bold young man. Even when his life was at risk (face-to-face __ death), he never had a second thought. Rather he determined (make_ mind) to save the life of the girl. He was doing all he could, while others stood watching him silently (tongue tie). None supported (back up) except a tempo truck driver. After a while, he carried the girl to a hospital and forced (arm twist) the duty doctor to admit the girl. What can we make out from this incident? Some people like Baleshwar remain undisturbed (keep cool) in moments of crisis.

Baleshwar Mishra was a bold young man. Even when he was face – to – face with death, he never had a second thought. Rather he made up his mind to save the life of the girl. He was doing all he could, while others stood watching him tongue-tied. None backed him up except a tempo truck driver. After

a while, he carried the girl to a hospital and arm-twisted the duty doctor to admit the girl. What can we make out from this incident? Some people like Baleshwar keep their cool in moments of crisis.

Listen And Comprehend

Task – 1: Listen carefully to the reading of the following passage and take notes by drawing and filling information in the flow – chart. If required, the teacher will read the passage twice.

During my second month of nursing school, our professor gave us a pop quiz. I was a conscientious student and had breezed through the questions until I read the last one: “ What is the first name of the woman who cleans the school?” Surely, this was some kind of joke.

I had seen the cleaning woman several times. She was tall, dark-haired and in her 50s, but how would I know her name? I handed in my paper, leaving the last question blank. Just before the class ended, one student asked if the last question would count toward our quiz grade.

“Absolutely, ” said the professor. ”In your careers, you will meet many people. All are significant. They deserve your attention and care, even if all you do is smile and say ‘hello’.

I’ve never forgotten that lesson. I also learned her name was Dimple.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Lesson Question And Answers

Listen And Comprehend

Task – 1: Listen carefully to the reading of the following passage and take notes by drawing and filling information in the flow – chart. If required, the teacher will read the passage twice.

During my second month of nursing school, our professor gave us a pop quiz. I was a conscientious student and had breezed through the questions until I read the last one: “ What is the first name of the woman who cleans the school?” Surely, this was some kind of joke.

I had seen the cleaning woman several times. She was tall, dark-haired and in her 50s, but how would I know her name? I handed in my paper, leaving the last question blank. Just before the class ended, one student asked if the last question would count toward our quiz grade.

“Absolutely, ” said the professor. ”In your careers, you will meet many people. All are significant. They deserve your attention and care, even if all you do is smile and say ‘hello’.

I’ve never forgotten that lesson. I also learned her name was Dimple.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Question And Answers

Task – 2: Imagine something bad has happened in your friend’s life. You meet him/her. You need to sympathize with and instill confidence in him/her. Write a dialogue.

Note: The following expressions are used to convey sympathy.

I’m sorry to hear about.....

That’s so sad.....

I’m awfully /dreadfully sorry about...

That's a pity / hard luck / I know how it feels.....

How upsetting/annoying/oh, how dreadful/terrible/awful...

You must be very upset.....

I'm extremely sorry to hear that/Im/ was deeply sorry to hear/learn about...

Bad luck.....

Can I help you in any way....?

Don't worry it'll turn out all right...

It may not be as bad as it looks...

Well, these things happen, don't they....?

Sham: Hello, I am sorry to hear about your accident.

Sudha: Please come in, take your seat.

Ravi: Sudha, It is so sad, How did it happen?

Raghu: That's a pity, How you are feeling now?

Sudha: What to do? It is all of my bad luck.

Sham: O.K. Could we help you in any way? We will give our notes to study, need not to worry at all.

Ravi: Sudha, don't worry, it'll turn out all right, you'll become normal within few days.

Raghu: Well, these things are common, have courage, we are all with you and we will support you.

Sudha: Now I got some courage. Thanks for your, support, guys.

All the three: Have confidence and recover soon.

Read And Respond

Task – 1: Look at the picture – 1 in column 'A'. Some statements are made in column 'B' about the actions as seen in 'A'. Some of the statements are wrong, and some of them are right if they are wrong, correct them. If they are a right to mark (✓)

There's A Girl By The Tracks Question Answer Pdf

- 1. A woman is walking with a child, [corrected]**
- 2 Some children are playing cricket, [right ✓]**
- 3. [wrong ✓]Two cows are seen in the picture.**
- 4. The window pane is broken [right ✓]**

5. A child is holding a tree [wrong ✓] A boy is holding a tree [corrected]

6. [wrong ✓] There is no river in the picture. [corrected]

7. [wrong ✓] In the background, there is a town [corrected]

Task – 2: Look at the picture-2. Try to describe what you can see in the picture. Some clues are given. One is done for you.

There's A Girl By The Tracks Question And Answer

- a. There are many people in the picture.
- b. Some people are marching in the procession,
- c. A child is drawing the bow.
- d. Two women are chatting
- e. Some children are running.
- f. A man is selling the balloons.

Practice Writing

Task -2: Work in pairs and write a letter to the editor, focussing on the problems of your locality.

S. Ramachandra

No. 536, III Cross,

Banashankari,

Bengaluru.

2nd February 2014,

The Editor,

Indian Express, M.GRoad, Bangalore – 560001.

Dear sir,

Sub: Broken pipeline

In our road the water pipe has broken and we didn't get the supply of water since Monday. The complaint was given already to B.W.S.S.B. But no one is responding. The whole locality is suffering. The concerned authorities should take steps to necessary action. We hope the best reaction from your side.

Thank you,

Yours faithfully,

S. Ramachandra

Task -3:

Prepare a questionnaire.

Imagine you are a correspondent of an English daily and you have to interview the following persons on the issue 'Safety measures taken with regard to traffic and the public response '.

I. Superintendent of Police

1. Good morning Sir/Madam. I am Abhilash I'm a reporter from an English Daily.
2. Sir/Madam, I've some questions. Could you spare some time for me, please?
3. We heard so many safety measures are taken recently, May I know about these?
4. The riders of the two-wheelers violate the safety rules. What do you say about?
5. The teen-agers driving is very rash. Do you agree this? How to control this?
6. Sir/Madam, what do you suggest to the parents and the public?
7. Nowadays the number of vehicles are increasing rapidly. It causes air and noise pollution. How do you think we can prevent pollution?
8. Sir/ Madam, what advice would you like to give to avoid accidents.
9. Sir/Madam, on behalf of our media I'm highly thankful to you.

II. Traffic Inspector

1. Good morning Sir/ Madam, I am Bharath. I'm a reporter from an English Daily.
2. Sir/Madam, I've some questions. Could you spare some time for me, please?
3. Nowadays the traffic is too heavy and traffic jams are regular. May I know what measures have been taken in this regard?
4. During peak hours, traffic jams are not clear quickly. What do you suggest to the public about this?
5. During peak hours the accidents are more. How to avoid accidents and traffic jam? What is your advice?
6. Though the safety measures are taken, we cannot control the traffic. What do you say?
7. How the public will respond? Please give your comments.
8. Sir/ Madam, on behalf of our media, I'm highly thankful to you.

III. Local MLA

1. Good morning Sir/Madam, I am Pradeep, I'm a reporter from an English Daily.
2. Sir / Madam, I've some questions. Could you spare some time for me, please?
3. Your responsibilities are more. Today I want to know your views on 'Safety measures taken with regard to traffic and the public response'. Your comments please.
4. Sir/Madam, are you satisfied about the measures taken by concerned authority ?
5. Sir/Madam, what are the other methods you suggest about?
6. Sir/Madam, are any complaints from the public about this?
7. Sir/Madam, what advice would you like to give him?
8. Sir / Madam, how do we make our traffic safety? Your comments please.
9. Sir/Madam, on behalf of our media I'm highly thankful to you.

Learn grammar through communication.

Task – 1: Read the following paragraph and carefully observe the words underlined. One word is struck off. Consult your teacher or a grammar book and know the reason.

Everybody Know/knows 'slow and steady win/wins the race', somebody try/tries to move slowly but some people want/wants to move at a faster pace. One of the students in my class is/are Jairaj. He is very industrious and energetic. He feels that in India everybody want / Wants to get success, but a few work/works diligently. They opine /opines that ' Time and tide wait for Avails for none. So everybody need/needs to work round the clock to make India stronger and better.

Answer:

Everybody knows 'slow and steady wins the race', somebody tries to move slowly but some people want to move at a faster pace. One of the students in my class is Jairaj. He is very industrious and energetic. He feels that in India everybody want / Wants to get success, but a few work diligently. They opine that ' Time and tide wait for Avails for none. So everybody needs to work round the clock to make India stronger and better

Task – 2 : Choose the correct verb out of the two given in brackets:

Neither he nor you _ wrong, (is/are)

His father and uncle _ their own business, (has/have)

The first innings ___ very interesting, (was/were)

Either Amrutha or her friends ___ taken it. (has / have)

Every one of the boys ___ sitting silently in the hall, (was/were)

Every leaf ___ fallen from this tree, (has/have)

Each of the boys __ done his homework, (has/have)

He, as well as you, ___ intelligent, (is/are)

Bread and butter __ his daily diet, (were/was)

Either you or he __ done it. (has / have)

One of the boy __ punished. (was/were)

Neither the children nor their mothers ___ admitted to hospital, (were/was)

Answer:

Neither he nor you are wrong, (is/are)

His father and uncle have their own business, (has/have)

The first innings was very interesting, (was/were) y

Either Amrutha or her friends have taken it. (has / have)

Every one of the boys was sitting silently in the hall, (was/were)

Every leaf has fallen from this tree, (has/have)

Each of the boys has done his homework, (has/have)

He, as well as you, js intelligent, (is/are)

Bread and butter was his daily diet, (were/was)

Either you or he has done it. (has / have)

One of the boys was punished. (was/were)

Neither the children nor their mothers were admitted to hospital, (were/was)

Task – 3: Read the following paragraph. A blank is given after each number. If the underlined word is correct write (C) in the blank. If the underlined word is wrong, write the right form of the word in the blank.

Everyone who has (1) eg., has ever been to a graduation ceremony know (2) knows how exciting it can be for the graduates. In our town, nearly the whole population comes (3) come each year. There are (4) is one thing that both graduates and guests enjoy (5) c the awarding of scholarships. This ceremony, along with concluding exercises makes (6) make attending the graduation worthwhile. Several of the students who receive (7) received awards plan (8) planned to attend the community college. Many former graduates is (9) are grateful for opportunities that such an award provides (10) provided to them.

Make reference

Study the meanings of a word given in a dictionary.

Compose (verb) composed, composing, transitive verb

1. consist of
2. combine together to form
3. makeup
4. write a piece of music
5. write a letter poem
6. try hard to become calm after feeling very angry, upset or excited.
7. to arrange to parts of a painting, photograph or scene in a way that achieves a particular result..

TASK 1: Some sentences are given below. In each sentence the word 'compose' is used. Identify the meaning given above and write the corresponding number in the boxes.

1. Nayana sat at the desk, taking several deep breaths to compose herself (6)
2. Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen. (1)
3. A.R. Rehman has composed music for the filmKocchadian (4)
4. The legal system is composed of people and people make legal systems. (3)
5. More than 17.6 million firms composed the business sector of our economy. (2)
6. I like the way Ravi composes his photographs (7)

There's a Girl by the Tracks! Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Question 1.

"There's a Girl by the Tracks !" is the extract which describes

- a) Small story
- b) a ferrible accident
- c) people of Mumbai
- d) Metropolis

Answer:

- b) a ferrible accident

Question 2.

"There's a Girl by the Tracks !" is the extract written by

- a) Devenkanal
- d) Shakespeare
- c) William Shakespeare
- d) Bernard Howe

Answer:

- a) Devenkanal

Question 3.

The accident took place at

- a) Bangalore
- b) Delhi
- c) Mumbai
- d) Kolkatta

Answer:

- c) Mumbai

Question 4.

The accident happened on

- a) Road
- b) riverside
- c) footpath
- d) On the railway track

Answer:

- d) On the railway track

Question 5.

Roma was wearing

- a) black salwar-kameez
- b) frock
- c) pant & shirt
- d) chudidhar

Answer:

a) black salwar-kameez

Question 6.

Roma was working as a

a) teacher .

b) call centre executive (CCE)

c) assistant

d) clerk

Answer:

b) call centre executive (CCE)

Question 7.

Roma was helped by

a) her friend

b) her colleague

c)Baleshwar

d) Co-passenger.

Answer:

c)Baleshwar

Question 8.

The accident had taken place on

a) December 10, 2010

b) December 20, 2011

c) December 25, 2012

d) December 21, 2010

Answer:

a) December 10, 2010

Question 9.

Baleshwar Mishra was

a) an unemployed

b) doctor

e) co-worker

d) graduate

Answer:

a) an unemployed

Question 10.

Roma's brother was

a) Baleshwar

b) Dinesh

c) Truck driver

d) Vijay.

Answer:

b) Dinesh

Question 11.

Roma's fiance was

a) Dinesh

b) Agarwal

c) Vijay

d) Baleshwar

Answer:

c) Vijay

Question 12.

The cop suggested to take her to

a) nearby hospital

b) Airoli

c) Mumbai

d) Mirzapur

Answer:

b) Airoli

Question 13.

The person who volunteered to help was

a) Motorist

b) Doctor

c) Cop

d) Tempo Truck driver

Answer:

d) Tempo Truck driver

Question 14.

The tempo truck driver spoke

a) Hindi

b) English

c) Gujarati

d) Marati

Answer:

c) Gujarati

Question 15.

Airoli was atleast __ kilometers away from there

a) 15

b) 10

c) 20

d) 25

Answer:

b) 10

Question 16.

The cop means

- a) helper
- b) police
- c) pedestrian
- d) caretaker

Answer:

- b) police

Question 17.

ICU means

- a) Indian council unit
- b) Intensive care unit
- c) Inside call unit
- d) Interior course unit

Answer:

- b) Intensive care unit

Question 18.

Dinesh Talreja's retail outlet is in

- a) Mumbai
- b) Thane
- c) Ulhasnagar
- d) Bardoli

Answer:

- c) Ulhasnagar

Question 19.

The doctor who treated Roma was

- a) Duty physician
- b) Dr. Vijay
- c) Dr. Dinesh
- d) Dr. Anil Agarwal

Answer:

d) Dr. Anil Agarwal

Question 20.

Baleshwar had revisited the spot because

- a) to investigate**
- b) looking for her belongings**
- c) to get assurance**
- d) to meet someone**

Answer:

b) looking for her belongings

Question 21.

The person who assured Baleshwar that some of Roma's belongings had been found.

- a) Ticket collector**
- b) Pedestrian**
- c) A railway employee**
- d) Doctor**

Answer:

c) A railway employee

II. Match the Following:

S.no	A	B
1.	swarm	a) move fast
2.	hurtle	b) low sound
3.	Tenuous	c) worried
4.	Thud	d) weak or shaky
5.	Wary	e) silenced
6.	muffled	f) rush

Answer:

S.no	A	B
-------------	----------	----------

- | | | |
|----|---------|------------------|
| 1. | swarm | f) rush |
| 2. | hurtle | a) move fast |
| 3. | Tenuous | d) weak or shaky |
| 4. | Thud | b) low sound |
| 5. | Wary | c) worried |
| 6. | muffled | e) silenced |

2.

- | S.no | A | B |
|------|-------------|-------------------------|
| 1. | clattering | a) come from |
| 2. | Emnate | b) with no hope |
| 3. | impulsively | c) a deep cut |
| 4. | frantically | d) making a loud sound |
| 5. | gash | e) run very fast |
| 6. | sprint | f) without any thinking |

Answer:

- | S.no | A | B |
|------|-------------|-------------------------|
| 1. | clattering | d) making a loud sound |
| 2. | Emnate | a) come from |
| 3. | impulsively | f) without any thinking |
| 4. | frantically | b) with no hope |
| 5. | gash | c) a deep cut |
| 6. | sprint | e) run very fast |

Answer the following questions in a word or a sentence each:

Question 1.

Which is the metropolis being referred to?

Answer:

Mumbai.

Question 2.

How old was Roma Talreja?

Answer:

Twenty-one.

Question 3.

How old was Baleshwar Mishra?

Answer:

Twenty years old.

Question 4.

Where did Roma Talreja work?

Answer:

Roma Talreja worked at a call centre.

Question 5.

Where was Baleshwar Mishra from?

Answer:

Baleshwar Mishra was from Mirzapur in Uttar Pradesh.

Question 6.

Who helped Baleshwar take Roma to the hospital?

Answer:

A tempo-truck driver who spoke Gujarati.

Question 7.

Why did Baleshwar not take the girl to Airoli?

Answer:

Baleshwar did not take the girl to Airoli as it was at least ten kilometers away and also because he knew of a hospital much closer.

Question 8.

Where was Dinesh employed?

Answer:

Dinesh was in a marketing job at a retail outlet in Ulhasnagar.

Question 9.

Who was the Medical Director of Divine Multi-speciality and Research Centre?

Answer:

Dr. Anil Agarwal.

Question 10.

Why was Roma astonished?

Answer:

Roma was astonished because a complete stranger had risked his life to save her.

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

What happened to Baleshwar as he jumped off the still-moving train?

Answer:

When Baleshwar jumped off the still-moving train, he fell and hurt his ankle. The force with which he fell could be surmised from the fact that part of the sole of his rubber slipper was torn off. Fortunately, there was no real damage though a burst of pain shot up his ankle. However, Baleshwar ignored his own pain to go in search of the fallen girl.

Question 2.

What does the phrase ‘treading water’ mean? Who is said to be treading water? Why?

Answer:

The phrase ‘treading water’ is an idiom. Someone who is treading water is not doing anything to make progress. Here Baleshwar is said to be treading water because his job hunt had proved fruitless.

Question 3.

Why did Baleshwar want to thank the truck driver?

Answer:

As Baleshwar stood on the road holding the bleeding girl in his arms, no one helped him take her to the hospital. Just when he had begun to lose hope, a tempo-truck pulled over and, its driver, a middle-aged man who spoke Gujarati, stepped out and helped Baleshwar take her to the hospital. But before Baleshwar could thank him for the noble deed, the man had disappeared, having done his duty.

Question 4.

What did Baleshwar Mishra do as soon as he saw the girl lying by the tracks?

Answer:

On seeing the girl by the tracks, Baleshwar immediately pulled the red emergency chain of the train. As the train slowed, he asked the other passengers to come with him to help the girl. No one came forward. Then Baleshwar bravely jumped off the still-moving train and rushed towards the girl.

Question 5.

How did the doctors at Divine Multi-Specialty Hospital treat Roma?

Answer:

The Medical Director of the hospital saw the extent of Roma's injuries and immediately admitted her to the ICU without any paperwork. X-rays were taken and the doctors found that she needed surgery. She was taken care of very well and recovered soon.

Question 6.

After Roma's recovery, what did she say about Baleshwar?

Answer:

Roma was amazed to hear about the manner in which she had been rescued. She wondered how a stranger could jump off a train and risk his life for her. She could not imagine what would have happened to her if Baleshwar had not been there. She felt that she could never repay him for what he had done.

Answer the following questions in 5-6 / 8-10 sentences each:

Question 1.

How did the two hospitals respond to Roma when she was taken there?

Answer:

It's heartening to see that the hospitals didn't respond in a disgraceful manner. Sometimes even hospitals are indifferent to accident victims and refuse to help. But, fortunately for Roma, if the first hospital gave her first aid, the bigger hospital offered treatment without standing on formalities. However, one question stands unanswered. Why did Baleshwar have to take Roma in the same truck to the next hospital? Shouldn't the first hospital have arranged for an ambulance? Luckily Roma survived. But the story could have been different if her injury had been of a more serious nature. That is why it's necessary that we, as citizens of India, impress upon our government the need to revamp the legal implications of helping an accident victim.

Question 3.

How did Baleshwar save Roma?

Answer:

As soon as Baleshwar saw a girl lying by the side of the tracks, he pulled the chain, jumped off the train, and ran back to where she had fallen. He found her unconscious, with a gash in the head. He carried the bleeding girl across the tracks. But, even after he reached this road, no one stopped to help him. Fortunately, a tempo truck driver helped Baleshwar take the girl, whose name he learn't was Roma when she regained consciousness for a brief while, to a nearby hospital. On coming to know that the hospital lacked the required equipment and personnel to treat the girl, the truck driver took them to another bigger hospital, the Divine Multi-Speciality Hospital at Ghansoli. The doctor admitted her immediately without standing on formalities and gave her first aid. As the doctor said, although the injury was not of a very serious kind, if no one had bothered to help Roma, she could have bled to death.

Question 5.

According to the Dalai Lama, 'Love and compassion are the true religions'.

How does this relate to the lesson 'There's a Girl by the Tracks!'?

OR

The Dalai Lama says, "Love and compassion are the true religions to me. But to develop this, we do not need to believe in any religion."

How can this be related to the lesson 'There's a Girl by the Tracks!'? Justify.

Answer:

By caring for a total stranger Baleshwar shows that his religion is of love and compassion. When all the other passengers remained inactive, Baleshwar jumped out of the moving train so as to reach the girl by the tracks before it was too late to help her. In spite of being an uneducated and unemployed youth, Baleshwar showed more refinement than all the others in the train. He hurt himself and went through a lot of hardship as he carried the girl across the tracks and ran looking for help. After many motorists had driven away showing no concern for the grievously injured girl, a tempo-truck driver showed the same nobility as Baleshwar and helped him get medical help for the girl. Thus we see that two gentlemen who save the life of a girl show that there is still goodness in humanity.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

"Now he was treading water, and had resigned himself to the fact that he was running out of options."

- a) What does the phrase 'treading water' mean?
- b) Who is referred to here?
- c) Why is he said to be 'treading water'?

Answer:

- a) Someone who is treading water is not doing anything to make progress.
- b) Baleshwar.

c) He is said to be treading water because his job hunt had proved fruitless. He was a high school dropout and in the present time when well-educated people find it hard to find a job, it was next to impossible for Baleshwar to find one.

Question 2.

Let's go and help her.

- a) Who made this cry?
- b) Why did she need help?
- c) Nobody volunteered to help her. Why?

Answer:

- a) Baleshwar.
- b) She had lost her balance and fallen off the train. She was lying unconscious by the tracks.
- c) According to Baleshwar, people are afraid of getting involved, in getting trapped in the courts or with the police.

Question 3.

Please help me take her to a hospital.

- a) Who requested for help? OR Who is the speaker? OR Who does 'me' refer to?
- b) Whom did the speaker request for help?
- c) Why did the speaker want help?

Answer:

- a) Baleshwar.
- b) He requested the motorists who drove by.
- c) Baleshwar wanted to take the girl who had fallen off the train and was lying unconscious by the tracks, to the hospital.

Question 4.

They fear getting trapped in the courts or with the police.

- a) Who said so?
- b) Who is 'they'?
- c) What do they fear?

Answer:

- a) Baleshwar Mishra.

b) 'They' refers to the people.

c) The people fear because they may have to go to the court or police station several times to give witness.

Question 5.

"Chacha, can I borrow your mobile?"

a) Who is referred to as chacha?

b) Who is the speaker?

c) Who did he want to speak to?

d) Why did he want the mobile? OR What did the speaker want to tell him?

Answer:

a) The truck driver.

b) Baleshwar.

c) Roma's brother, Dinesh.

d) He wanted to inform Dinesh about the accident. So he asked the truck driver for his mobile.

Question 6.

"There's a closer place I know of,"

a) Who is the speaker?

b) Why did he choose that place?

c) What happened after going to that place?

Answer:

a) Baleshwar Mishra.

b) The cop suggested that Baleshwar take Roma to Airoli which was at least 10 kilometers away. Roma was bleeding profusely and had to be given immediate medical help. So Baleshwar decided to take her to a place which was closer.

c) The hospital lacked the facility and personnel to treat Roma. The on-duty physician advised Baleshwar to take Roma to a nearby hospital.

Question 7.

"Whom can I call?" he asked quickly, fearing that she would black out once more.

a) Who does 'V' refer to?

b) What did the listener answer?

c) What do you mean by 'blackout' here?

Answer:

- a) Baleshwar.
- b) Dinesh Talreja.
- e) Become unconscious.

Question 8.

"Take the girl to Airoli" suggested the cop. "There's a hospital there".

- a) Who was to be taken to Airoli?
- b) Why did he suggest so?
- c) Why did Baleshwar not agree to this?

Answer:

- a) Roma Talreja.
- b) Because Roma was bleeding profusely.
- c) The cop suggested that Baleshwar take Roma to Airoli which was at least 10 kilometers away. Roma was bleeding profusely and had to be given immediate medical help. So Baleshwar decided to take her to a place which was closer.

Question 9.

"Whom can I call?" he asked quickly.

- a) Who asked this question?
- b) Why did he ask quickly?
- c) What was the reply?

Answer:

- a) Baleshwar Mishra.
- b) Because he feared she (Roma) would blackout or become unconscious again.
- c) She replied, 'My brother Dinesh'.

THERE'S A GIRL BY THE TRACKS! SUMMARY IN ENGLISH

‘ There’s a Girl by the Tracks ! ’ is the extract taken from an English Journal. This is written by a well-known writer Deven Kanal in English. This is one of the terrible accidents which W happened at Mumbai suburban station in Thane district, which borders Mumbai. One evening at 6.32 pm an electric train halts at a station. As usual the station is full of people and everybody hurried to catch the train. At Mumbai this is the regular scene because it is India’s most populated Metropolitan city. Roma Talreja a 21 years old call centre executive tried to settle into a corner near the door of an electric train As it was very rush and already the train was already moving fast, Roma jammed between other women.

She tried to find some space to stand safely but all of a sudden she got pushed, she was not able to manage herself to stand firmly. Her weak and shaky foot lost their grip and her hands tried to hold the steel railing above, but finding only air she was thrown out of the coach. She fell on the ground more than a meter below. She was knocked senseless. The low sound of her fall was silenced by the loud sound of the train. No one observed her fall. Another train was coming in the opposite direction passed beside this train.

Baleshwar Mishra, twenty years old standing near the door couldn’t believe his eyes. He saw the fall of Roma fall. Wearing a black Salwar- Kameez, her body was lying next to the tracks. Those who saw this scene screamed and the people cried out “There’s a Girl by the Tracks!”. Quickly Baleshwar went and grabbed the train’s red emergency chdin and pulled it down with no hope. But luckily the train slowing down its speed comes to a stop. He saw the worried faces of the people surrounded and asked them to come and help her. But nobody came forward to help her. Baleshwar jumped off from the moving train. As he landed on the ground, a burst of pain shot up in his ankle, but there was no damage. His old rubber slipper’s sole torn off as a result of his jumping from the train. When he got down from the train, the train again started to move and disappeared.

Baleshwar started to run very fast between the tracks to find Roma. He was so far away from her. That he couldn’t see her. After running for several minutes he found her lying stretched by the side of the tracks. When he found her, he asked “Behenji, aap theek hai ? ” But there was no response and no help in sight. He could see blood flowing out of a deep cut behind her head. Saying a silent prayer, he carried her and searching for a way out. He crossed through some shrubbery, and reached the road. He was seeking help from motorists but no one stopped. The day was December 10, 2010, a Friday. Roma Talreja a B.Com., graduate from Pune was working in call center as an executive for two years.

She loved her job. After her day’s duty she went to cafeteria, where she and her friends joked, laughed and made plans for the weekend. When she was returning home the accident happened. Baleshwar Mishra a lanky youngster from Mirzapur, UP, was unemployed. He had recently come to Mumbai. He is an highschool dropout, living with his two elder brothers. He was hunting for a job till that day it is not fruitful. So, he had lost his hope. That day he spent his time, had lunch and watched a movie with his friend. When he was returning home, thinking about his future he boarded the train. The terrible accident happened, at that moment he could only think of saving a stranger’s life.

Baleshwar was struggling very hard to hold the blood-stained woman in his arms. Though innumerable motorists drove by, no one came forward to help him. At last a tempo-truck stopped. Baleshwar begged earnestly to help him, he agreed and helped. Baleshwar was quickly telling the driver what had happened. The traffic policeman arrived and suggested them to take the girl to Airoli where there is a hospital. But Baleshwar did not agree because that hospital was 10 kilometers away from that place.

Baleshwar knew that there was a hospital nearby and they went to that hospital. It was a very small hospital, nurses helped to take the young woman inside the hospital. The physician gave basic First Aid to her and advised them her to take to a nearby Hospital. Baleshwar and the truck-driver carried her back into the truck. When the vehicle moved unsteadily her eyes opened slightly. Baleshwar was with her, asked her name, she managed to tell her name as Roma. Baleshwar asked her whom should he inform to. She said that her brother Dinesh and with much effort she gave his mobile number. Soon she lost her consciousness and went back into the darkness.

Baleshwar took the mobile from the truck driver and informed Dinesh. When Dinesh Talreja was closing the days business, he got the call and agree to come immediately. He had marketing job at a retail shop in Ulhasnagar. Roma was admitted to Divine Multispeciality Hospital and Research Centre. Dr. Anil Agarwal, the medical director, seeing the condition of Roma admitted immediately to the ICU without any paper work or formalities. He asked Baleshwar to wait until Roma's family arrived. After this, Baleshwar noticed that he couldn't thank the truck driver because the driver already left the place. Roma s X-rays showed that she needed only deep wounds sutures although the injuries looked severe.

There would be no lasting damages. Dr. Agarwal s opinion was that she could have bled to death if nobody helped her. Baleshwar had brought her to the hospital at the right time. Baleshwar came to meet her next morning she was still partly sedated. Dinesh told him that Roma s cell phone and handbag were missing. So Baleshwar went to the spot and was looking for her belongings. A railway employee informed that some of Roma s belongings had been found. Roma made full recovery in a few days. She was thinking about the accident and said that she could n't imagine what would have happened if Baleshwar hadn't been there. She was (amazed) surprised to learn of the manner in which she had been rescued.

Really she was astonished that a stranger would jump off from the train and risk his life for her. She thought that-she could, never repay Baleshwar This is the real compassion and it is a great virtue. Without any expectation, Bcdeshwar did this. According to' Baleshwar Mumbai people are afraid to help because they had the fear of getting trapped in the courts or police; If anybody asked him why he had done that, he simply said that she needed help, that day it was Roma, tomorrow it could be some other like you or me. Helping is necessary for those who needed, especially timely help will save the life. Here author's intention is to love everybody, help the needful, that is the great virtue. It changes the world and it becomes paradise and man becomes divine

QUALITY OF MERCY.

Quality Of Mercy Question And Answers Question 1.

Mercy is compared to something in the first two lines of the poem what is it? How is this comparison apt? Justify your answer.

Answer:

In the first two lines of the poem, the poet compares mercy to gentle rain from heaven. This comparison has many suggestions: first of all it signifies that just as the gentle rain is one of the natural phenomena, mercy is a natural trait in human beings. If human beings don't show mercy, then they don't deserve to be called human beings.

Secondly, the analogy between the gentle rain and mercy is also symbolic of the fact that mercy comes one's way unexpectedly and when it comes, it is as soothing as the gentle rain. Thirdly, the gentle rain from heaven is indicative of God's mercy on human beings. Since we expect and enjoy God's mercy on us, we cannot deny the same to others. The Christian spirit is to say, "Do unto others as you would have them do to you."

Quality Of Mercy Poem Question And Answer Question 2.

The speaker says that mercy is twice blessed. What does she mean by this?

Answer:

When the speaker says that mercy is twice blessed, she draws the attention of the giver to the fact that even as he gives, he receives because mercy blesses not only the receiver but also the giver. The speaker tries to show that if the receiver of mercy is blessed with a sense of gratitude, the giver has the sense of fulfillment of being God's messenger as he has acted with divinity.

Quality Of Mercy Poem Notes Question 3.

'Sceptre shows the force of temporal power'. In contrast, what or whose quality does mercy stand for?

Answer:

If the scepter shows the force of temporal power, mercy shows the permanent worth of a king because it flows from his heart and makes him Godlike. It is only when the monarch has the quality of mercy that he can do justice to the concept of the king is divine. Mercy and forgiveness are enduring themes that pervade Shakespeare's works. The poem is an example of the esteem in which Shakespeare held those who showed mercy. Shakespeare presented mercy as a quality most valuable to the most powerful, strongest, and highest people in society.

Quality Of Mercy Poem Pdf Question 4.

Some traits or qualities are mentioned below. Classify them into two categories of temporal power and divine (Godly) attributes.

(love, revenge, sympathy, tyranny, cruelty, miserliness, mercy, hatred, tit-for-tat attitude, compassion)

Answer:

Temporal attributes: revenge, tyranny, cruelty, miserliness, tit-for-tat attitude
divine attributes: love, sympathy, mercy, compassion

Read And Appreciate

1. Work in pairs/groups and answer the following questions.

The Quality Of Mercy Poem Questions And Answers Question 1.

Read the first two lines. Explain the simile (comparison) briefly.

Answer:

In the first two lines of the poem, the poet compares mercy to gentle rain from heaven. This comparison has many suggestions: first of all, it signifies that just as gentle rain is one of the natural phenomena, mercy is a natural trait in human beings. If human beings don't show mercy, then they don't deserve to be called human beings. Secondly, the analogy between the gentle rain and mercy is also symbolic of the fact that mercy comes one's way unexpectedly, and when it comes, it is as soothing as the gentle rain. Thirdly, the gentle rain from heaven is indicative of God's mercy on human beings. Since we expect and enjoy God's mercy on us, we cannot deny the same to others.

Quality Of Mercy Question Answer Question 2.

How do you interpret the speaker's interpretation of mercy as twice blessed?

Answer:

If mercy is shown to somebody, the giver is blessed; simultaneously the person who takes (receives) mercy is also blessed. So according to the speaker, it is twice blessed. The interpretation is as follows: –

In nature, if the cloud is blessed, it showers the rain on the earth. On the other hand, the earth also gives trees and fruits if it is blessed. That means both the cloud (giver) and the earth (receiver) were blessed twice. It is vice-versa.

Quality Of Mercy Poem 10th Class Notes Question 3.

The speaker compares the power of the king with the power of mercy, saying that mercy is the mightiest of the mightiest. How does she justify this? (Read the last part of the text carefully)

Answer:

The throned kings had the power to rule. They carry their scepter which indicates their royal power. The scepter is also a symbol of their majesty. They can create a threat and fear in the hearts of their people by using their worldly power. But Mercy is the divine quality if the monarchs had imbibed mercy in their heart, they become like God. Mercy can overrule the temporal power and kings are changed like God. So the speaker compares both and says that Mercy is the mightiest of the mightiest.

Quality Of Mercy Poem 10th Class Question 4.

Can you think of any story wherein such virtues as mercy, compassion or sacrifice are high lighted? If so, narrate them in the class.

Answer:

The story posted on Mail Online on Sunday, April 27th, 2014 is an amazing story of mercy and forgiveness. A mother whose only child was shot dead showed the ultimate forgiveness – by inviting her son's killer to live next door. Mary Johnson, 59, now lives in the apartment adjoining the home of 34-year-old Oshea Israel and they share a porch. In February 1993, Mrs. Johnson's son, Laramiun Byrd, 20, was shot in the head by 16-year-old Israel after an argument at a party in Minneapolis, Minnesota. Israel, who was involved with drugs and gangs, was tried as an adult and sentenced to 25 and a half years. He served 17 before being released.

He now lives back in the neighbourhood where he grew up – next door to the mother of the young man he murdered. Mrs. Johnson said she originally wanted justice and to see Israel locked up for what he

had done. However, later she decided to found a support group and counselled mothers whose children had been killed and encouraged them to reach out to the families of their murderers, who were victims of another kind. Then, just a few years ago, the 59-year-old teacher and devout Christian, asked if she could meet Israel at Minnesota's Stillwater State Prison. She said she felt compelled to see if there was a way in which she could forgive her son's killer.

At first he refused but then nine months later, changed his mind. Israel said he was shocked by the fact she wanted to meet him. He said: 'I believe the first thing she said to me was, "Look, you don't know me. I don't know you. Let's just start with right now." 'And I was befuddled myself.' The pair met regularly after that. When Israel was released from prison around 18 months ago, Mrs. Johnson introduced him to her landlord – who with her blessing, invited Israel to move into the building. Mrs. Johnson and Israel are now close friends, a situation that she puts down to her strong religious beliefs but says she also has a selfish motive. She said: 'Unforgiveness is like cancer. It will eat you from the inside out.

It's not about that other person, me forgiving him does not diminish what he's done. Yes, he murdered my son – but the forgiveness is for me.' Mary Johnson even wears a necklace with a two-sided locket – on one side are photos of herself and her son; the other has a picture of Israel. Israel admits he still struggles with the extraordinary situation he finds himself in. He said: 'I haven't totally forgiven myself yet, I'm learning to forgive myself. And I'm still growing toward trying to forgive myself.' Israel now hopes to prove himself to the mother of the man he killed. He works at a recycling plant during the day and goes to college at night. He says he's determined to pay back Mrs. Johnson's clemency by contributing to society. He visits prisons and churches to talk about forgiveness and reconciliation. Mrs. Johnson often joins him and they tell their story together. He added: 'A conversation can take you a long way.'

Quality Of Mercy KSEEB Solutions Question 5.

This poem has fourteen lines. But it is not a sonnet. Look at the ending of the lines and justify the above statement.

Answer:

The poem 'Quality of Mercy' does not have either the quatrains or the couplet. Neither does it have the usual rhyme scheme. In fact what we see here is Free verse which is an open form of poetry. It does not use consistent meter patterns, rhyme, or any other musical pattern. It thus tends to follow the rhythm of natural speech. This is understandable as the selected piece is an extract from Shakespeare's play 'The Merchant of Venice'. There are fourteen lines in a Shakespearean sonnet.

The first twelve lines are divided into three quatrains with four lines each. In the three quatrains the poet establishes a theme or problem and then resolves it in the final two lines, called the couplet. The rhyme scheme of the quatrains is abab cdcd efef. The couplet has the rhyme scheme gg. This sonnet structure is commonly called the English sonnet or the Shakespearean sonnet, to distinguish it from the Italian Petrarchan sonnet form which has two parts: a rhyming octave (abbaabba) and a rhyming sestet (cdcdcd).

QUALITY OF MERCY ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Multiple Choice Questions

Quality Of Mercy Question And Answer Question 1.

William Shakespeare was well known

- a) dramatist of his time**
- b) Poet**
- c) Sonnet writer**
- d) actor**

Answer:

- a) dramatist of his time**

Quality Of Mercy Solutions Question 2.

“Quality of Mercy” is an extract from

- a) Jullius Caesar**
- b) The Merchant of Venice**
- c) Merchant of Europe**
- d) Sonnet**

Answer:

- b) The Merchant of Venice**

Quality Of Mercy Notes English Question 3.

“Quality of Mercy” was written by

- a) Thomas**
- b) Christine Rigden**
- c) Bernard Howe**
- d) William Shakespeare**

Answer:

- d) William Shakespeare**

The Quality Of Mercy Notes Question 4.

Portia was the main character of

- a) Quality of Mercy**
- b) Compassion**

c) **The Merchant of Venice**

d) **Julius Caesar**

Answer:

c) **The Merchant of Venice**

Quality Of Mercy Question Answers Question 5.

The throned monarch better than

a) **his crown**

b) **his kingdom**

c) **his people**

d) **Mercy**

Answer:

a) **his crown**

10th English Quality Of Mercy Question Answer Question 6.

The quality of mercy is not

a) **in heaven**

b) **in earth**

c) **with the kings**

d) **strain'd**

Answer:

d) **strain'd**

10th English Quality Of Mercy Poem Summary Question 7.

His Sceptre shows the force of

a) **kings**

b) **temporal power**

c) **divine power**

d) **Gods**

Answer:

b) **temporal power**

Quality Of Mercy Summary In English Question 8.

Mercy is

- a) quality**
- b) attribute**
- c) twice blest**
- d) power**

Answer:

- c) twice blest**

Summary Of The Poem Quality Of Mercy Question 9.

If droppeth as the

- a) gentle rain**
- b) monarch**
- c) kings**
- d) gods**

Answer:

- a) gentle rain**

The Quality Of Mercy Summary Question 10.

It is enthroned in the

- a) God himself**
- b) like Gods**
- c) heart of kings**
- d) Seasons Justice**

Answer:

- c) heart of kings**

The Quality Of Mercy Question And Answers Question 11.

Temporal means

- a) view point**
- b) worldly power**

c) temper

d) blessed

Answer:

b) worldly power

KSEEB Solutions For Class 10th English Quality Of Mercy Question 12.

Wherein doth sit the dread and

a) mercy above

b) heart of kings

c) fear of kings

d) likest God.

Answer:

c) fear of kings

II. Match the following :

1.

Answer:

1 – d

2 – a

3 – f

4 – e

5 – b

6 – c

2.

Answer:

1 – e

2 – f

3 – a

4 – b

5 – c

6 – d

Answer the following questions in a word or a sentence each:

Quality Of Mercy Poem In Kannada

Question 1.

Why does mercy drop like rain from heaven, according to Portia?

Answer:

According to Portia, mercy is never forced or compelled and so it drops freely like rain from heaven.

Quality Of Mercy Poem Summary In Kannada Question 2.

How is mercy 'twice blessed'?

Answer:

Mercy is twice blessed because it blesses the one showing mercy and the one receiving mercy.

10th Quality Of Mercy Poem Question 3.

What does show the force of temporal power?

Answer:

The scepter.

Quality Of Mercy 10th Standard Poem Question 4.

What attributes does the speaker liken to the sceptre?

Answer:

The speaker attributes awe and majesty to the sceptre.

Quality Of Mercy 10th Notes Question 5.

How is mercy above the sceptred sway?

Answer:

Mercy is divine and hence its power is superior to the earthly power of kings symbolized by the sceptre.

The Quality Of Mercy Question Answer Question 6.

What is the earthly power referred to?

Answer:

The speaker refers to authority that is vested in mortal beings like judges or kings as earthly power.

The Quality Of Mercy Short Questions And Answers Question 7.

How is mercy an attribute of God Himself?

Answer:

Mercy is an attribute of God Himself as it is a divine quality, superior to all other human qualities, justifying the idea that God has created man in His own image.

Quality Of Mercy Class 8 Questions And Answers Question 8.

When do you find earthly power resembling God's power?

Answer:

We find earthly power resembling God's power when the quality of mercy is enthroned in the heart of kings.

Quality Of Mercy Poem Summary In English Question 9.

What happens when mercy seasons justice?

Answer:

When mercy seasons justice, the giver of justice gets blessed and becomes divine.

The Quality Of Mercy Questions And Answers Question 10.

Mention the three things of temporal power of a king.

Answer:

Throne, Crown and Scepter.

The Quality Of Mercy Summary In Kannada Question 11.

What does the speaker compare the power of the king to?

Answer:

The speaker compares the power of the king to the temporal power of the scepter.

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Quality Of Mercy Summary Pdf Question 1.

Why does the speaker say, 'The quality of mercy is not strained'?

Answer:

The speaker says the quality of mercy is not strained because he is of the opinion that mercy is a natural attribute of human beings. That is why he compares mercy with the gentle rain from heaven.

Quality Of Mercy Notes Pdf Question 2.

What is meant by ‘mercy seasons justice’?

OR

What happens when mercy is tempered with justice?

Answer:

The phrase ‘mercy seasons justice’ can be interpreted in different ways as the word ‘seasons’ has different meanings. It can mean flavours, tempers, enhances etc. Interestingly all meanings fit the context. It can be said that justice gets enhanced and becomes more attractive if it goes hand-in-hand with mercy. If the judgement, even if it is the right one, is too harsh, it should be made more moderate or temperate with mercy.

The Quality Of Mercy Poem Summary In Kannada Question 3.

‘Mercy is the mightiest of the mightiest’. How does the poet justify this?

Answer:

Mercy is the mightiest of the mightiest because its power is mightier than all the other powers that a king can boast of. The throne, the crown and the scepter are all symbols of power of the king. But all these signs of power lose their importance as they speak of merely earthly power. The earthly power is short-lived. Mercy should have its place of prominence in the heart of the king as it makes the king God-like.

Answer the following questions in 5-6 / 6-8 sentences each:

Summary Of The Quality Of Mercy Question 1.

Describe how Shakespeare depicts the quality of mercy.

OR

What are the qualities of mercy?

Answer:

The Christian spirit of forgiveness is highlighted in the poem ‘Quality of Mercy’. Shakespeare seems to uphold the notion that if man is the true image of God, then he should be Godlike in his behaviour. One of the qualities that would make man divine is the quality of mercy enshrined in his heart. The quality of mercy comes to everyone naturally like the gentle rain from heaven. Its importance is heightened in the case of a ruler because he needs to temper justice with mercy.

Quality Of Mercy 10th Poem Question 2.

What does qualify a monarch more – mercy or throne? Why?

Answer:

If the sceptre shows the force of temporal power, mercy shows the permanent worth of a king because it flows from his heart and makes him Godlike. It is only when the monarch has the quality of mercy that he can do justice to the concept of the king being divine. It looks better in a king than his own

crown looks on him. The sceptre is a symbol of awe and majesty in which lies the source of the dread and fear that kings command. But mercy is above that sceptred power. It is enthroned in the hearts of kings. Hence mercy qualifies a monarch more than his throne.

Question 3.

How does Portia describe the quality of mercy?

Answer:

Portia describes the quality of mercy using different analogies. To show that mercy is natural for a human being, she compares it with the natural and gentle rain that drops from above. To show that mercy is divine, she contrasts it against the throne, the crown and the scepter which are all symbols of a king's earthly power. She says that mercy is twice blessed. It blesses both the giver and the receiver. Mercy becomes an attribute of God Himself if mercy seasons justice.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

The quality of mercy is not strained;

It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven Upon the place beneath.

- a) What does the poet mean by the word 'strained'?**
- b) Explain the simile in the second line of the passage.**

Answer:

- a) Mercy is not mercy when pressure is put upon a person to show mercy, when he is under strain to show mercy.**
- b) True mercy comes spontaneously from the merciful person to the offender. It comes as quietly and naturally as the rain comes gently and freely to the place beneath the sky. Here the poet compares mercy and the gentle rain that drops from heaven.**

Question 2.

'Tis mightiest in the mightiest; it becomes The throned monarch better than his crown.

His sceptre shows the force of temporal power,

The attribute to awe and majesty,

Wherein doth sit the dread and fear of kings;

- a) What do the crown and sceptre symbolize?**
- b) What is temporal power?**

Answer:

a) Crown and sceptre symbolize kingly power. The crown is worn by the king. A new king is always crowned. Sceptre is an ornamental staff held by the king. It again is a symbol of his authority.

b) Temporal power is earthly power.

Question 3.

And earthly power doth then show likest God's

When mercy seasons justice.

a) When do you find earthly power resembling God's power?

b) What kind of justice does the poet recommend?

c) What happens when mercy seasons justice?

Answer:

a) We find earthly power resembling God's power when the quality of mercy is enthroned in the hearts of kings.

b) The poet recommends justice that is seasoned with mercy. He means that justice that is too harsh is not justified even if the wrongdoer deserves punishment.

c) When mercy seasons justice, the giver of justice gets blessed and becomes divine.

Question 4.

"It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven Upon the place beneath. It is twice blest"

a) What is compared to the gentle rain from heaven?

b) Why does the speaker feel it is twice blest?

c) 'It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven'.

What is the figure of speech used here?

Answer:

a) Mercy.

b) According to the speaker, not only the person who shows mercy but also the person who receives mercy is blest. Hence it is twice blest.

c) Simile.

Question 5.

'It's mightiest in the mightiest'

a) Who is mighty?

b) How is it mighty?

Answer:

- a) Mercy.**
- b) The quality of mercy is divine. Hence it is more powerful than all the symbols of power on earth.**

Question 6.

It blesseth him that gives, and him that takes.

- a) How does it bless the one who gives?**
- b) How does it bless the one who takes?**

Answer:

- a) The giver is blessed as he has the sense of fulfillment of being God's messenger as he has acted with divinity.**
- b) The receiver is blessed with a sense of gratitude.**

Question 7.

“And earthly power doth then show likest God's When mercy seasons justice.”

- a) When does earthly power become like divine power?**
- b) How should the king's judgement be?**
- c) What happens when mercy seasons justice?**

Answer:

- a) When earthly power is filled with mercy it becomes divine power.**
- b) The king's judgement should be seasoned with mercy.**
- c) When mercy seasons justice, kingly power seems most like God's power.**

Question 8.

“The quality of mercy is not strain'd

It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven.”

- a) What is 'mercy' compared to?**
- b) Why does the poet say that mercy is not strain'd?**
- c) What is the meaning of the word 'strain'd' in this context?**

Answer:

- a) Gentle rain from heaven.**

b) Because it is divine power given by God.

c) Forced/compelled.

QUALITY OF MERCY POEM SUMMARY IN ENGLISH.

“Quality of Mercy” is the extract taken from the play “The Merchant of Venice” In the play, Portia, the main character argues why mercy is the greatest virtue of all? The well-known poet William Shakespeare describes the quality of mercy through Portia in the play. This is not the poem or a sonnet only argument of Portia. Here Portia conveys and the greatness of Mercy.

The quality of mercy is not showered by force or compulsion. It showered like a gentle rain directly from Heaven or paradise to Earth. Whenever mercy is given, it comes back i.e., gives and take. So it is blessed by two times. It becomes strongest of strongest, never ceased. The kings and emperors of the earth had their power. They had all the worldly powers, they can J do, what they were thinking. They can rule as they like.

Their quality or character makes the threat in the hearts of the people. The people had fear about their king’s power, though they had majesty (dignity). But if the kings had mercy in their heart, it ruled over their power. Mercy should be seated in the hearts of the kings, they become like that of God. Then their royal power changes to God’s power. They are good to their people and loved by subjects (people). So mercy is my quality of God those who cultivate mercy in their character, they become like God. Accord ’g to the author, mercy is the divine quality and greatest virtue of all.

GENTLEMAN OF RIO EN MEDIO

GENTLEMAN OF RIO EN MEDIO QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS, NOTES, SUMMARY

Whether you want to become an expert in English or to get good marks in the exam, you have one and only solution is practicing with Karnataka Class 10 English Chapter wise Solutions. Strengthen your weakness by learning the KSEEB Class 10 English on our site. You can learn directly online on our website or learn off line by downloading Karnataka Class 10 English Chapter wise material. Save your time and read Karnataka Class 10 English Subject at your comfort level.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question 1.

The old man was ____ (Fill in the blank with the most appropriate word)

Answer:

unhurried.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Notes Question 2.

Do you think the ancestors of the old man lived in Rio en Medio?

Answer:

Yes, by reading the para 1,1 thought the ancestors of the old man lived in Rio en Medio.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Questions And Answers Question 3.

A word in line 4 of paragraph I suggests that the old man was a farmer. Pick that word.

Answer:

The old man was a farmer ‘tilled’ suggests it.

10th English Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Notes Question 4.

Study the picture and describe the old man’s orchard by using the words given below:

Answer:

The old man’s orchard was big and beautiful. A small stream was flowing through the orchard. The house was unpleasant to look because it was old fashioned. Many trees were fruit-bearing trees. A number of fruits were more on the tree, so the orchard is attractive.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Pdf Question 5.

In paragraph 2 the words “who” and “these” refer to __ and __ respectively.

Answer:

The words ‘who’ and ‘these’ refer to senator and people in the mountains.

Gentleman Rio En Medio Notes Question 6.

Look at the picture and draw your inference about the old man’s appearance and his social/living condition.

Answer:

The old man was strong and disciplined. Though the dress was old and tom, he wore that to follow his tradition. He had social respect in the village because he was a highly principled man. He loved his innumerable kins. His appearance was elegant.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Solutions Question 7.

The word “innumerable kin” means that the old man had a number of

- a. children
- b. trees in his orchard
- c. relatives
- d. followers
- e. canes.

Answer:

The word “innumerable kin” means that the old man had a number of relatives.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Lesson Notes Question 8.

In the Indian context, the eyes of women are compared to fishes (Meenakshi) and lotus (Kamalakshi) based on their shape and size. Why do you think the eyes of the boy are likened to gazelle? Can you write it in Kannada? Note: gazelle in Kannada is (□□□□)

Answer:

Harinakshi = □□□□□□□□

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Notes Pdf Question 9.

How did the old man the people who had been waiting for him?

Answer:

The old man bowed to all the people who had been waiting for him.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question Answers Question 10.

The old man removed his hat and gloves carefully.

a. Was he afraid that they would get spoiled?

Answer:

(a) No, he was not afraid but it was his practice.

b. Whose style did it remind the writer of?

Answer:

The old man’s style was similar to that of Charlie Chaplin. Chaplin once did that in a picture, He was the Janitor of a bank in that movie. The writer remembered this when he observed the old man.

Share your Responses:

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Questions And Answers Pdf Question 1.

In the meeting of the old man and the Americans, they talked about rain and the old man’s large family. It was

- a. to mock his large family
- b. to break the ice
- c. a custom of the Americans
- d. to make themselves comfortable
- e. to prepare everyone for the main talk

f. to make everyone know that it had not rained in that area (You may think more than one among the above are appropriate. If so, tick them)

Answer:

d. to make themselves comfortable

e. to prepare everyone for the main talk

Rio En Medio Notes Question 2.

Why do you think the storyteller spoke Spanish?

Answer:

When the storyteller said “these Americans are Buena gent”, we can think that he was speaking Spanish.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Answers Question 3.

The storyteller offered the old man almost the double of what he had quoted earlier. Why?

Answer:

When the surveyor surveyed the property of the old man, he discovered that the area was much larger than what was initially thought of. The buyers too, being decent people, wished to give the old man the actual worth of the property which was double what was quoted earlier. Hence the speaker, who is the mediator, offered the extra amount to the old man.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question And Answer Question 4.

What was the reaction of the old man to the story teller’s offer?

Answer:

The old man reacted in a very strange way. One would even describe it as a stupid way. Instead of feeling happy that he was getting double of what he had earlier thought he would get, he refused to take the extra money saying that he did not like being insulted. His argument was that he had agreed to sell the property for twelve hundred dollars and offering more than that to him was an insult to him.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question Answer Question 5.

We respect elders in many ways. For example.

a. We touch their feet

b. We shake hands

c. _____

d. _____

e. _____

f. _____

Answer:

c. We salute them.

d. We greet them

e. We obey them.

f. We garland them.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Lesson Questions And Answers Question 6.

The storyteller respected the old man by ____ (Fill in the blanks with appropriate words)

Answer:

Shaking his hand.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question And Answers Question 7.

After the findings of the engineer, the offer was doubled for the old man's land.

a. Did the old man raise the rate?

b. Did the storyteller offer more?

Answer:

a) No, he didn't. The surveyor found out that the old man possessed almost twice as much as what he thought he did. The property was much more than eight acres.

b) No, the Americans who were the buyers of the property, offered the old man the extra money for the extra land. The writer only conveyed the message to the old man.

Question 8. Match the following:

Answer:

1 – e

2 – c

3 – b

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Summary In English Question 9.

Don Anselmo took only 12 hundred dollars for the land finally because.

a. the storyteller failed to convince Don Anselmo to make more money than what had been agreed upon.

b. Don Anselmo was a man of principles (Tick the correct Answer)

Answer:

b. Don Anselmo was a man of principles.

10th English Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question 10.

What did Don Anselmo do as he left the place With money?

Answer:

The old man shook hands of all, put on his ragged gloves, took his stick and walked out with the boy behind him, when he left the place with money.

Share your Responses:

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Answer Key Question 1.

Fill in the blanks with a suitable word/s to describe the land and the house sold by the old man.

Answer:

Before it was sold

After it was sold

a. peeled off plaster

replastered the house

b.gnarled trees

pruned trees

c. torn fence

patched the fence

Kseeb Solutions For Class 10 English Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question 2.

From the list given below, tick the activities with which the children of Rio en Medio

were involved, after the Americans occupied the house and the land sold by Don Anselmo.

i) pruning the trees

ii) renovating the house

iii) playing in the orchard

iv) speaking harsh words to the Americans in Spanish

v) plucking flowers from the trees

vi) putting fences around their play area.

vii) laughing whenever they were spoken to

viii) running around the land

Answer:

iii) playing in the orchard

- v) plucking flowers from the trees
- vi) putting fences around their play area
- vii) laughing whenever they were spoken to

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio 10th Class Lesson Question 3.

The possibilities for a week-long delay for another meeting are given. Which of them do you agree with ? Discuss with your partner. The old man.

Answer:

The old man was slow

The Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question 4.

Don Anselmo repeated certain things whenever he met the story teller and took leave of him. Write them down. One is done for you.

- a. the old man shakes hands
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____
- e. _____

Answer:

- b. put on his ragged gloves/he removed his hat and gloves.
- c. take his stick/handed his things to the boy.
- d. walked out/sit on the chair.
- e. the boy followed behind him/the boy stood behind the chair.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Kseeb Solutions Question 5.

Don Anselmo was sincere when he said, “The Americans are good people.” There is nothing in the character of Anselmo to suggest that he is capable of such sarcasm. He was sincere in his words when he said at the time of selling the property that he knew the goodness of the Americans. The problem with Anselmo was that he did not know the legal implications of selling the property.

Share your Responses:

1. Fill in the blanks/choose the most appropriate answer:

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Lesson Question 1.

Don Anselmo sold his land but he didn't sell his ___

Answer:

Trees.

10th Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question 2.

The children of Rio en Medio were Don Anselmo's ___ and ___

Answer:

Sobrinos, nietos, [nieces and nephews and grand children].

10th Standard English Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question 3.

Don Anselmo inherited the house from his ___.

Answer:

mother.

Kseeb Solutions For Class 10 English Question 4.

According to Don Anselmo, the real owners of the trees were ___

- a. the children of Rio en Medio**
- b. Don Anselmo himself**
- c. The Americans**
- d. the storyteller**
- e. Don Anselmo's ancestors**

Answer:

- a. the children of Rio en Medio**

Gentleman Rio En Medio Question 5.

Don Anselmo did not sell the trees. Why do you think he did not? Tick the correct ones.

- a. Trees were like children to him**
- b. They were grown for the children of the next generation**
- c. He thought they did not belong to him but to the children**
- d. He had grown them in memory of his ancestors**
- e. He wanted his surroundings to be green**

Answer:

- c. He thought they did not belong to him but to the children**

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio” Study Guide Question 1.

Don Anselmo’s appearance and manners were quite unusual. How would you support this statement based on the text ?

Answer:

Don Anselmo wore the long, old, faded coat. He wore tom gloves and carried a woman out Umbrella’s skeleton as a stick. A dark young hoy always followed him Though he was an old man, he bowed to all and removed his hat and gloves slowly and carefully.” The manner of removing is also similar to that of Charlie Chaplin. By all these factors we could say his appearance and manners were quite unusual.

10th English Notes Question 2.

Whose argument do you agree with? Don Anselmo’s or the storytellers? Give reasons.

Answer:

We agree with Don Anselmo’s argument when he sold his property. Though it is unusual and far way from reality, according to him it was correct. He was a man of principles, he thought that it was right to stand on his words. So he refused to take more than the amount agreed upon. In the second incident also he was right because the tree was planted in the name of new born child. All the trees belong to children only. He had no right to sell them though it is unusual. But here the story teller’s saying is in vogue. (Practise).

10th Class English Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question 3.

Don Anselmo was passionate about his land and the children of Rio en Medio. Which details in the text support this statement? Write to them.

Answer:

Don Anselmo was very much passionate about his land and the children. His land had come from his ancestors. He lived in that land from his birth. He took possession of his house from his mother. Everyone in the village were his relatives and the children are his nieces, nephews and grand children. Every time a child has been bom in Rio en Medio, a tree was . planted in its name.

10th English Lesson Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question 4.

Don Anselmo’s reaction to the offer of more money was not ex-pected. justify this statement.

Answer:

Usually any person get offer for more money he would ac-cepted. But Don Anselmo’s reaction was not at all ex-pected. Though it is a fair of-fer, after surveying, the land rate was double. Double the land, double the money. But once he agreed to sell his land for twelve hundred dollars, he should stick on his words. It was not expected.

Gentlemen Of Rio En Medio Question 5.

Read paragraph 5 and identify the tone or reaction of the old man while uttering the following word/words. Some examples are given. – You may use any other appropriately (Mild / harsh / blunt /authoritative / self-assertive/confident/comfortable /polite / aggressive)

Answer:

The old man Tone / reaction

- a) Friend – Comfortable**
- b) I do not like – harsh**
- c) I know these – confident**
- d) I do not care to be – aggressive**
- e) That is the price – authoritative**

English Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Notes Question 6.

Why do you think the Americans wanted to buy Don Anselmo’s land?

Answer:

In the given prose, the reason was not mentioned. Generally we can think that the land and orchard was good, beautiful and fruitful. A stream was running through the orchard. The trees had more fruits. The land was fertile and big. So Americans wanted to buy Don Anselmo’s land.

Gentle Of Rio En Medio Question 7.

Don Anselmound the Americans were generous in their own ways. Comment on this.

Answer:

Don Anselmo was generous. He refused to accept more money for his property. He loved children and planted a tree for every child. Americans were generous, they won’t quarrel with the old man though they had legal right to own the trees.

The Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Questions And Answers Question 8.

At last, the problem of ownership was resolved. But it took a long time. What might be the reasons for it? Write a paragraph on it.

Answer:

The storyteller or Americans convinced the persons individually. The descendants have agreed to sell their trees to them. It was a long procedure to convince everyone. At last they have agreed and sold the trees to AmericAnswer: The problem wassolved but it took a long time.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Lesson Extracts Question 9.

Read the story and arrange the given events in .the order in which they occur in the &text.

- a) The story tefitfeoffered Don Anselmo more money than what had been agreed upon.**

- b) The children of Rio en Medio disturbed the peace of the American Answer:
- c) The Americans bought the trees from the descendants of Don Anselmo
- d) The story teller was surprised at the strange argument of Don Anselmo.
- e) Don Anselmo lived up in Rio en Medio
- f) The buyers renovated the house.
- g) Don Anselmo signed the sale deed after the negotiation for 12 hundred dollars.
- h) Don Anselmo felt offended when he – was offered more money.
- i) The occupants of the house came up with lots of complaints about the children of Rio en Medio.

Answer:

- e)
- a)
- h)
- g)
- f)
- b)
- i)
- d)
- c)

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Question 10.

Imagine that a group of 4 students endorses the old man's views. The other group supports the American Answer: Write a paragraph on each group's argument; Discuss them with groups.

Gentleman Of Rio En Medio Questions And Answers Question 11.

Imagine that your neighbour is in a fix as the Americans were. How would you solve the problem?

Answer:

10 & 11 For Self assessment.

Enrich Your Vocabulary:

Task – 1 : Look for the words in the word maze which match with the given meaning. One is done for you. Note the number given in brackets is the number of letters in that word. Read across, down and diagonally.

Cane (4): a long thin stick

9) finding something that was not known earlier discovery .

8) thing/things that someone owns property

7) a place where fruit trees are grown orchard

5) ability to control people – power

Task – 2: Find out the words in the given word maze and match with their meanings. Read across, down and diagonally.

9) to go with someone – accompany

8) official record – document

6) the Way in which something is done – manner

4) price -rate,cost

9) unhappy about something – complaint

4) agreement – deed

7) many (across) – several

Task – 2: Self Assessment

Read And Respond

Read the passage carefully and answer the questions set on it. Passage

A small crowd had gathered around the entrance to the park. His curiosity aroused, Robert crossed the road to see what was happening. He found that the centre of attraction was an old man with a performing monkey. The monkey's tricks, he soon discovered, were in no way remarkable. So, after throwing a few pennies in the dirty hat which the man had placed on the pavement, Robert moved off along with other members of the crowd.

At this point the man suddenly let out a loud cry. Everyone turned to see what had happened. The man was bending over his monkey, which now lay quite still on the pavement. He picked up the apparently lifeless body and holding it close to him, began to weep. A young man stepped forward from the crowd and taking some money from his pocket, dropped it into the hat. Robert and several other people did likewise, until the pennies in the hat were covered with silver coins. Meanwhile the man continued to hold the dead monkey in his arms and seemed to take no notice of what was going on about him.

A few months later, Robert came across the old man, again in another part of the city. The man had a monkey, bought no doubt, with the money the crowd had given him. It did not, however, seem any better at its tricks than the previous one. Robert was pleased to see that the old man was still able to earn a living, though on this occasion, having partly paid for the monkey out of his own pocket, he did not feel inclined to throw any money into the hat.

But the performance was not yet over. Once again the old man let out a loud cry. Once again the monkey lay still on the pavement. The man picked up the “dead” monkey and clutching it in his arms began to weep. The same young man stepped forward and threw some money into the hat. Again the crowd followed suit -except Robert. Smiling to himself he went on his way, amazed at the man’s audacity.

Question 1.

Robert went to the other side of the road because ____

- a) he wanted to help the old man by giving him some money
- b) he wanted to see why the crowd had gathered
- c) he was curious to watch the monkey’s tricks
- d) he had seen one of his friends over there

Answer:

- b) he wanted to see why the crowd had gathered

Question 2.

The word “pavement” in the fifth line of para 1 is ____

- a) a temporary tent which is used for public entertainment
- b) a path at the side of the road for people to walk
- c) a small budding made of wood
- d) a shelf on the road

Answer:

- b) a path at the side of the road for people to walk

Question 3.

The old man let out a loud cry suddenly in order to ____

- a) keep the monkey quiet for some time.
- b) let the crowd know that his monkey was dead
- c) let the crowd know that he was a poor man
- d) show that he was hurt

Answer:

- b) let the crowd know that his monkey was dead

Question 4.

Why did the old man begin to weep?

Answer:

The oldman began to weep to get the sympathy from people and expect more money from them.

Question 5.

What wise thing did Robert do after he watched the monkey's tricks for the second time ?

Answer:

Robert was smiling to himself and went on his way and amazed at the man's audacity.

Practice Writing

Task -1: You have some money in your savings account in a nationalised Bank. Now you need some money to buy books. You can withdraw money from the bank by presenting a cheque to the Bank. How do you fill in the cheque? Here to an example.

Task – 2: You can write a cheque in the name of Ankita for rupees one thousand. Keep note of the following while writing the cheque.

- a) Write the name carefully
- b) Cross the cheque by putting double diagonal lines on the left hand top corner of the cheque if it is an account payee cheque.
- c) Signature should be as you sign on any other document.
- d) Write the amount both in words and figures.

Task – 2 :Complete Hemanth's mother's reaction

Hemanth moved to the edge of the compound to pluck guava fruits. He lost balance, fell down and broke his leg. His mother said, "If you had not moved _____."

Answer:

"If you had not moved to the edge of the compound, you wouldn't have fallen down and broken your leg".

Task – 3: In the inter-school cricket match, the captain of your school team chose only one fast bowler. As a result, your team lost the game.

Your reaction: If the captain of our team ____ (complete the sentence).

Answer:

"If the captain of our team chose more than one fast bowler, we would have won the game.

Task – 4: Monsoon rains failed. Farmers could n't grow crops. Newspaper reported: Had it rained _____

Answer:

Had it rained, the farmers could grow crops.

Task – 5: Shanthanu scored less marks in English. Therefore he could n't get a seat in the college he wanted. Guess the response of his father : ____

Answer:

The response of his father: If you had scored the highest marks, you would have got a seat in the college you wanted.

Task – 6 :

Chitra: You missed the train, didn't you?

Saina: Yes. I went to the railway station at 10.30 a.m. But the train had left at 10.15 am.

Chitra: If you __ (go) to the station at 10 a.m. __ wouldn't __ (miss) the train.

(Complete the sentence)

Answer:

Chitra: If you had gone to the station at 10 a.m. you wouldn't have missed the train.

Make reference

Task 1: The given table provides you information about the services offered at different counters in a Bank. Read the table and also the paragraph is given below. Answer the questions.

Counter number 010203040506 Services offered Enquiry Savings Bank Loans Demand Draft Cash Deposits

One of the Americans wished to buy 2 acres of land. The oldman quoted rupees 50,000 for his land. But, the American didn't have enough money with him. He re-quested his friend to help him with money. He sent a cheque for rupees 20,000 to the American. The American went to a Bank for a loan. The Bank manager asked him to open an account which he did. The oldman wanted the American to pay the price for the land only in the form of a demand draft. The oldman invested 50% of the amount which he received from the American on deposits.

Which counter did the American and the old man approach for the following? Fill in the box provided. One is done for you.

Gentleman of Rio en Medio Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Question 1.

The author of the "Gentleman of Rio en Medio" was

a) Willian Shakespeare

- b) JuanA.A. Sedillo**
- c) Marina de BeUagente**
- d) P.T. Narasimhachar**

Answer:

- b) JuanA.A. Sedillo**

Question 2.

This lesson is classified under the unit

- a) Nativity**
- b) Compassion**
- c) Happiness**
- d) Science**

Answer:

- a) Nativity**

Question 3.

The important character of Hero of the lesson is

- a) Juan A. A. Sedillo**
- b) Storyteller**
- c) Don Anselmo**
- d) Americans**

Answer:

- c) Don Anselmo**

Question 4.

Don Anselmo had the most of what

- a) Talkative nature**
- b) Discipline**
- c) money**
- d) time**

Answer:

d) time

Question 5.

His house was small and wretched but

a) beautiful

b) quaint

c) unpleasant

d) gnarled

Answer:

b) quaint

Question 6.

The little ___ ran through his land.

a) creeper

b) snake

c) creek

d) shrubs

Answer:

c) creek

Question 7.

The orchard was ___ and ____

a) gnarled and beautiful

b) small and wretched

c) big and unpleasant

d) wretched and quaint.

Answer:

a) gnarled and beautiful

Question 8.

His coat was old, green and ___

a) nice

b) big

c) comfortable

d) faded

Answer:

d) faded

Question 9.

One of his kin had eyes like a ____

a) fish

b) gazelle

c) ball

d) Almond

Answer:

b) gazelle

Question 10.

He removed his gloves like a ____

a) Charlie Chaplin

b) Prince Alberts

c) Thomas

d) Senatorcarton

Answer:

a) Charlie Chaplin

Question 11.

He carried a cane, it was only the skeleton of a worn-out ____

a) Fence

b) Chair

c) Umbrella

d) Cot

Answer:

c) Umbrella

Question 12.

Don means Spanish little of respect much like ____ in English.

a) Sir

b) Madam

c) friend

d) Father

Answer:

a) Sir

Question 13.

buena gente means

a) people

b) bad people

c) Colleagues

d) good people

Answer:

d) good people

Question 14.

According to Surveyor the land measures

a) Two acres

b) more than eight acres

c) 10 acres

d) more than 10 acres

Answer:

b) more than eight acres

Question 15.

The price fixed to his land was

a) twelve hundred dollars

- b) twice the agreed
- c) more than 12 hundred dollars
- d) Twenty four hundred dollars.

Answer:

- a) twelve hundred dollars

Question 16.

His gloves were

- a) new
- b) ragged
- c) big
- d) comfortable

Answer:

- b) ragged

Question 17.

The children of the village laughed and talked back in ___

- a) Spanish
- b) American
- c) Indian
- d) English

Answer:

- a) Spanish

Question 18.

The children of the village were ___ their property.

- a) run through
- b) overrunning
- c) possessed
- d) claimed

Answer:

b) overrunning

Question 19.

Blossoms means

a) Flowers

b) Fruits

c) flowers on the tree

d) Fruits in the tree

Answer:

c) flowers on the tree

Question 20.

Broach means

a) Subject

b) people

c) Friends

d) raise the topic.

Answer:

d) raise the topic.

Question 21.

Senor means a word of respect like ___ in English.

a) Mister

b) Man

c) Madam

d) Mrs.

Answer:

a) Mister

Question 22.

Don Anselmo took the possession of the house from his

a) father

- b) ancestors
- c) mother
- d) descendants

Answer:

- c) mother

Question 23.

Every time a child has born in Rio eh Medio Don Anselmo had the practise of planting

- a) a seed
- b) a tree
- c) herb
- d) shrub

Answer:

- b) a tree

Question 24.

Prince Alberts means

- a) long, double-breasted coat
- b) old long coat
- c) old green coat
- d) old green faded coat.

Answer:

- a) long, double-breasted coat.

II. Match the following :

1.

S.noAB1.Negotiationa) unpleasant2.wretchedb)good people3.creekc) official discussion4.Buena Gented) tom5.raggede) agreement6.deedf) a small narrow stream or river

Answer:

S.noAB1.Negotiationc) official discussion2.wretcheda) unpleasant3.creekf) a small narrow stream or river4.Buena Genteb) good people5.raggedd) tom6.deede) agreement

2.

S.noAB1.abodea) nieces and nephews2.ranchb) home3.Sobrinoc) relatives4.Nietosd) unhurried5.the old man wase) grandchildren6.innumerable kinf) a very large form

Answer:

S.noAB1.abodeb) home2.ranchf) a very large form3.Sobrinoa) nieces and nephews4.Nietose) grandchildren5.the old man wasd) unhurried6.innumerable kinc) relatives

III. Give one word/phrase answers for the following :

Question 1.

The place in Santa Fe Country, New Mexico, the United States where Don Anselmo lived.

Answer:

Rio en Medio

Question 2.

A branch of a tree with twisted hard lumps.

Answer:

gnarled

Question 3.

The unusual and attractive especially in an old fashioned way.

Answer:

quaint

Question 4.

A piece of land in which fruit trees are grown.

Answer:

orchard

Question 5.

A type of small deer which has large beautiful eyes.

Answer:

gazelle

Question 6.

A silent film comedian in English films.

Answer:

Charlie Chaplin

Question 7.

Someone whose job is to look after a school or a large building.

Answer:

Janitor

Question 8.

Thomas Benton Catron, a senator from New Mexico 1912-1917.

Answer:

Senator Catron

Question 9.

To cut off some branches of a tree to make it grow better.

Answer:

Prune

Question 10.

done or said first to prepare for something.

Answer:

Preliminary

Question 11.

A very large farm.

Answer:

ranch

Question 12.

A group of people related to a family that existed long ago

Answer:

descendants

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

Why does Don Anselmo refuse to accept more money for his property?

Answer:

The initial understanding was that Don Anselmo would sell his property for twelve hundred dollars in cash, to the Americans. So he refuses to accept more money.

Question 2.

Are the descendants of Don Anselmo entitled to the money they receive for the trees? Give reasons for your answer.

Answer:

Don Anselmo is the oldest man in the village and almost everyone in the village is his relative. Since Don Anselmo himself feels that not he, but his descendants, have right over the trees, it is all right for them to receive money for the trees. It is as if Anselmo has bequeathed trees unto them.

Question 3.

Describe the old man's property.

Answer:

The old man's house was small and wretched but quaint. His orchard was gnarled and beautiful. A little creek ran through his land. The property extended across the river and was almost twice more than the eight acres it was originally thought to be.

Question 4.

What did the Americans speak about with Don Anselmo to break the ice?

Answer:

The Americans spoke about the weather and rain to break the ice. They also spoke about Don Anselmo's family.

Question 5.

The storyteller offered the old man almost the double of what he had quoted earlier. Why?

Answer:

The storyteller offered the old man almost double what he had quoted earlier because he discovered that Don Anselmo owned much more than eight acres of land and it was almost twice what he had thought.

Question 6.

After the survey, why did the Americans offer double the quoted price for the old Titan's land?

Answer:

The Americans were good people. When they found out that Don Anselmo owned almost twice what he had thought, they offered to pay double of the price they had quoted earlier.

Question 7.

What changes did the Americans make to Don Anselmo's property?

Answer:

The Americans replastered the old house. They pruned the trees and patched the fence.

Answer the following questions in 5-6 sentences each:

Question 1.

What details describe Don Anselmo's appearance when he first comes to the office? What details describe his behaviour? How does his behaviour contrast with his appearance?

Answer:

Don Anselmo's appearance and manners can be termed unusual because he was shabbily dressed, but was majestic in his behaviour. His coat was old, green and faded; gloves were torn and the cane was the skeleton of an umbrella. Yet he bowed to all in a ceremonious manner and was followed by a boy ready to take his orders. When the storyteller saw Anselmo in his suit, he was reminded of Senator Catron who had been very influential with the people up in the mountain. The storyteller remarked that it perhaps was one of his old Prince Alberts. Again, when Anselmo bowed, and slowly and carefully removed his hat and gloves, the storyteller was reminded of Charlie Chaplin who had come up with similar actions while portraying the character of a Janitor. In other words, the storyteller made indirect references to Anselmo's majestic manner though his clothing and other accessories did not match the grandeur.

Question 2.

What is the external conflict in 'Gentleman of Rio en Medio'?

Answer:

'Gentleman of Rio en Medio' makes subtle references to the question of external conflict. We see external factors impinging upon the internal happiness and tradition. The story makes it clear that even when no one is at fault, there might be conflict because of external factors. In the story we see that the Americans cannot understand the idea of the old man planting trees for all his descendants. They buy the trees from the descendants to avoid friction. Everything seems to have been amicably settled.

However, one cannot completely overlook certain other possibilities. Although there are no more references to the descendants, one point becomes apparent. The descendants have been attracted by money, which is the first sign of commercialisation. This can be taken as an indication of traditional values giving way to commercial factors.

Question 3.

"I did not sell the trees because I could not, they are not mine". How did the old man support this statement?

Answer:

The lesson 'Gentleman of Rio en Medio' has a strange plot. Don Anselmo surprises the narrator, sellers and the readers with his refusal to take more money than what is mentioned in the contract for his property. Even when he is told that the surveyor had discovered that his property was almost double of what it was thought to be, he refuses to take more money.

If this strangeness is surprising, his stand on the trees in the orchard is even stranger. After selling the orchard to the Americans, he states that he has sold only the orchard, and not the trees in the orchard. He adds that even if he wanted, he wouldn't be able to sell the trees as the trees didn't belong to him. He adds that he had planted a tree each for the children of the village as and when they were born and hence they were the rightful inheritors of the trees. Although his logic is strange, we cannot question his integrity because we should remember that he had refused money earlier with equally strange logic.

GENTLEMAN OF RIO EN MEDIO SUMMARY IN ENGLISH

"Gentleman of Rio en Medio" was written by Juan A.A. Sedillo. This prose is based on the story of Author's actual legal case. Rio en Medio is a place in Santa Fe county, New Mexico, United States. The storyteller (author) as a lawyer and held public office.

The hero of the lesson was Don Anselmo. He was the most respectful old man of that village. He had a small house and orchard. The storyteller was the mediator, between Don Anselmo and American people. The American people wanted to buy Don Anselmo's property. But Don Anselmo was not in a hurry to sell his property. He was an old man and plenty of time. He lived in his ancestral land. He tilled the same land they had tilled. He had a small, unpleasant house. It was built in an old fashion. A small narrow stream was flowing throughout his land. A lot of trees were grown in his orchard and it was beautiful.

After much effort and negotiation of the storyteller, the Oldman agreed to sell his property. It took months of time. The oldman came to the office on the day of sale. He wore old, green faded coat. By looking the old man, author remembers the Senator Catron (Thomas Benton Catron, a senator from New Mexico, 1912-1917). had the great power to control the mountain people. The oldman's coat was similar to Prince Alberts, that means old man was wearing his old, long, double-breasted coat. He wore old and tom gloves and his fingertips can be seen through them. He carried a cane, it was only the skeleton of a worn-out umbrella. Behind him, one of his relative boy was followed. The boy (young man) was dark and his eyes are like a gazelle, (large beautiful eyes of small deer).

The old man's behaviour was completely different from others. He bowed to all the persons in the room and removed his hat and gloves. This action is similar to that of Charlie Chaplin's action once he did it in a picture. Chaplin's role was the Janitor in a bank. The old man gave his things to the boy and sat on a chair. The conversation was started about the rain and his family. The old man was very proud of his large family. Finally, the mediator came to the topic. The old man was agreed to sell his property for twelve hundred dollars in cash. The buyer got survey of the land and came to know that the land extended and it almost doubles, what they want to purchase and agreed before. So they were very good people and ready to pay twice the amount. They kept the money ready in front of the old man.

The old man thought for a moment and the story teller's proposal made him insult, because he was a man of principles. He didn't agree to take more money from them. Authoritatively he said that he is ready to sell his house and land for twelve hundred dollars only. The storyteller argued but the old man was not ready to accept more money. Finally he signed the deed and took the money and went out as usual. A month later the buyers renovated the house and orchard, and they moved there to live, but the children of the village were overrunning their property. They came everyday, played under the trees and built little fences and took flowers. Buyers warned them but they simply laughed and talked good naturedly in Spanish. This complaint came back to the office.

To solve the problem the story-teller sent a messenger to call Don Anselmo. It took a week to arrange the meeting. When the old man came, the problem was discussed. The storyteller asked the old man being the most respected man of the village, why couldn't he stop the children from doing so. The buyers might enjoy their new home in peace. After hearing, Don Anselmo replied that he sold his property to them because they were good people, but he didn't sell them the trees in the orchard. The story-teller tried to explain that generally if the land/orchard is sold the possession of the trees in that place is also to buyers.

The old man accepted the matter and continued that he is the oldest man in the village, everyone in the village were his relatives and all the children are nieces, nephews, and grandchildren. Every time a child has been born in Rio en Medio, he had planted a tree for that child. The trees in that orchard are not his, that belong to the children of the village. So he had no right to sell and he didn't sell it. Legally the buyers owned the trees but the old man was so generous and he refused to accept the fortune from him. Afterwards, the buyers bought all the trees individually from the descendants of Don Anselmo. It took most of the following winter.

I AM THE LAND

I am the Land Poem Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

I Am The Land Question Answer Question 1.

Who do you think is the speaker of the poem?

Answer:

The land/the earth is the speaker of the poem.

10th English I Am The Land Notes Question 2.

"I wait", in line one suggests the feeling of

- a) annoyance**
- b) patience**
- c) disgust**

(Choose the right mood of the speaker)

Answer:

(b) Patience.

I Am The Land Poem Questions And Answers Question 3.

In line 2 “you” is repeated. Do you think it refers to the same person? Who do you think that is?

Answer:

Yes, it refers to the same person. The person is the man who exploits the land. (Earth)

Summary Of The Poem I Am The Land Question 4.

Bring out the contrast between the reader and the speaker as suggested in lines 4, 5 and 6.

Answer:

The contrast between the reader and the speaker are a man and the earth.

- a) Man shouts earth lie patiently.**
- b) Man buys earth waits.**
- c) Man-made holes, the earth would stare.**

I Am The Land Poem Summary Question 5.

“muddy holes” refers to

- a) virtual holes in the land**
- b) intention of the speaker.**
- c) commotion created by the reader**

Answer:

- a) virtual holes in the land**

I Am The Land Questions And Answers Question 6.

What does the phrase “car lot eyes stare” suggest? Try to imagine and draw, if you can, the picture suggested.

Answer:

The phrase ‘car lot eyes stare’ suggests the perception as if the earth were staring with the lights of the car parked on it.

I Am The Land Summary In English Question 7.

The poem introduces some types of people and things. Some actions associated with them are given below. Classify them appropriately as suggested in the poem.

Answer:

I Am The Land Question And Answer Question 8.

Pick out the line from the poem that expresses the “self assertion” of the speaker.

Answer:

The self-assertion of the speaker is “You cannot put a fence around the planet Earth”.

Read And Appreciate

Read The Passage Carefully And Answer The Questions Set On It

I Am The Land Summary In Kannada Question 1.

“I wait”, is repeated five times in the poem. What quality of the speaker is highlighted with this repetition?

Answer:

The patience of the earth is highlighted with the repetition of the word “wait” five times in the poem. Though the man exploits the land, the earth patiently tolerates man’s deeds. Here the Earth exhibits her patients which is unchallengeable. Her limit of patience is maximum.

I Am The Land Summary Question 2.

The poem has figures of speech. One is given, “a chain-link necklace chokes me” is personification. Pick out one or two or more such figures of speech from the poem.

Answer:

- i) I am the land. I wait.**
- ii) You shout. I lie, patient.**
- iii) With muddy holes and car lot eyes, I stare.**

I Am The Land Poem Summary In English Question 3.

The poem is not full of rhyming words. On the other hand, it makes us imagine some pictures like soldiers shooting, children dancing. Pick out other images from the poem.

Answer:

The images are

- i) Carlot eyes tare.**
- ii) Someone tilling the earth**
- (iii) Someone (you) shouting.**

I Am The Land Poem Pdf Question 4.

“YOU CANNOT PUT A FENCE AROUND THE PLANET EARTH” Is this a tone of weakness or self-assertion? Discuss.

Answer:

It is the tone of self-assertion. The land has all along been patient. It has hoped for the better. But when it sees that human behaviour is growing from bad to worse, it realises the need to be assertive and says with the strength that man cannot curtail the spirit of the earth.

I Am The Land Summary Photo Question 5.

Which line or lines do you enjoy reciting most? Give reasons for your choice.

Answer:

Self- assessment by the student.

eg: “You cannot put a fence around the planet Earth”.

Man cannot compare himself with the earth planet. There is a vast gap or difference between the two. When we recite these lines we can rejoice because it is a challenge for the self-assertion of the earth.

I am the Land Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

I Am The Land Summary 10th Class Question 1.

“I am the land” was the poem written by

- a) Marina**
- b) Marinade Bellagent**
- c) Liujude**
- d) Alexander Pope.**

Answer:

- b) Marina de Bellagent**

I Am The Land Summary English Question 2.

In this poem the speaker was

- a) Nature**
- b) Man**
- c) Land/Earth**
- d) Woman**

Answer:

c) Land/Earth

I Am The Land I Wait Figure Of Speech Question 3.

Own means

a) ours

b) Yours

c)Hers

d) possess.

Answer:

d) possess.

Class 10 English Poetry Chapter 3 Question 4.

The person who tills the land is

a) Farmer

b) Soldier

c) Children

d) Man

Answer:

a) Farmer

Question 5.

The person who comes with guns called as

a) Poet

b) Doctor

c) Author

d) soldier

Answer:

d) soldier

Question 6.

The opposite of shout is

- a) Shouted
- b) Unshout
- c) Whisper
- d) Talk

Answer:

- c) Whisper

Question 7.

In the poem who waits

- a) Author
- b) poetess
- c) Land
- d) Man

Answer:

- c) Land

Question 8.

Here the children are

- a) Dancing
- b) Praying
- c) Playing
- d) Skipping

Answer:

- a) Dancing

Question 9.

The opposite of buy is

- a) Bought
- b) Sell
- c) Sold
- d) Buying

Answer:

b) Sell

Question 10.

Who cannot put a fence around the planet earth?

a) Land

b) Earth

c) Man

d) poet

Answer:

c) Man

Match the following:

Answer:

1 – e

2 – f

3 – a

4 – b

5 – d

6 – c

Answer the following questions in a word or a sentence each:

Question 1.

Why and for whom does land wait?

Answer:

The land does not wait for anyone. It just waits. It cannot do anything else but wait.

Question 2.

What do ‘muddy holes and car lot eyes’ refer to?

Answer:

They refer to potholes and puddles.

Question 3.

Why was a chain-link necklace put around the land?

Answer:

People who owned the land wanted to protect their property from trespassers and therefore might have put a chain-link necklace around the land.

Question 4.

When do the children dance?

Answer:

When the land is tickled and bears fruits, grass and trees.

Question 5.

Mention the figure of speech in the line: 'I am the Land. I wait.'

Answer:

Personification. The poet makes the inanimate land animate by making it the speaker.

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

Comment on the line, "You say you own me."

Answer:

There is a note of irony here. Man thinks he owns the land. In fact he is the product of the land. The land should claim its right on him and not the other way round. Yet the selfish man thinks of the earth as his possession and takes the mother earth for granted.

Question 2.

What are the activities that go on over the land?

Answer:

Man buys land, digs the land and plants trees, grows fruit on it. Children dance and play on land. Man also fences and makes boundaries over the land.

Question 3.

What quality of the land is highlighted in the poem?

Answer:

As man continues to exploit the land, it watches everything patiently and waits for things to change. The land on and off has hopes for better things as good sensitive man plants and brings life to the land. But the joy does not last. Man chokes the land. But the land is resilient. It continues to wait. It is optimistic that there will be a change. It has faith in the goodness of people.

Answer the following questions in 6-8 sentences each:

Question 1.

What is the central idea of the poem 'I am the Land'?

OR

How does the poet show that the earth is an ocean of patience in the poem, 'I am the Land'?

Answer:

The poem 'I Am the Land' makes a powerful statement against man's different ways of exploitation of the land. As a builder, as a consumer, as an urbanite and as a warmonger man continuously takes the land as his own and ill-treats it. The land watches everything patiently and waits for things to change. The land on and off has hopes for better things as good sensitive man plants and brings life to the land.

When the land thus comes to life with trees, fruit, and grass, it's rejoicing time for all. Children dance and someone sings. But the joy does not last. Man, in his role as a warmonger, chokes the land. But the land is resilient. It waits even now. But now it is assertive. It tells a man that he cannot fence the planet earth. The land continues to wait. But this time it waits to see if the man has taken the cue to change for the better. If a man still exhibits no common sense, it would be his lot to suffer.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

"A chain-link necklace chokes me now."

- a) Who has put the chain link necklace?**
- b) Who does 'me' refer to?**
- c) Why was the chain-link necklace put there?**

Answer:

- a) The chain link necklace has been put by the people who own the land.**
- b) Mother Earth.**
- c) People who owned the land wanted to protect their property from trespassers. Therefore they might have put a chain-link necklace around the land.**

Question 2.

"Then someone

tickles me, plants life fruit".

- a) What does 'tickle mean in the context?**
- b) How is it tickled?**

c) What is the mood of the speaker in the statement?

Answer:

a) Here 'tickle' means, 'to plough the land'.

b) The land is tickled when the people plough the land, plant trees and grow fruits.

c) The mother earth watches patiently when the people plough the land, plant trees and grow fruits. It waits for things to change.

I AM THE LAND POEM SUMMARY IN ENGLISH

This is the poem categorized under "Nativity". Here the poetess wants to describe the patience of the Earth. The Earth is Personified and like a mother, she can tolerate all sorts of violations. This is the first person Narrating poem. The poetess herself being the earth and says what are the things she had to tolerate. In the first stanza, she explains the man says he owned the earth she simply waits.

Is it possible to own the earth because it is a planet and who gave the rights to own her? But the earth will not dispute with the man, She would wait. The person shouted with rage then also the earth lie patiently. He says that he bought her still she waits. The man would exploit her making muddy holes and the lights of the parking vehicles but she would stare at these things. The farmer ploughs the land and grows the plants, trees crops, etc, The children would come and dance on the earth.

Someone comes and sings, The soldiers come with guns and put the fence it makes the earth to suffocate. The earth felt it very bad though she is suffocated she patiently waits. Though the mother earth suffers a lot, she can patiently tolerate and challenged the man that he cannot put a fence around the planet earth. Earth as a whole planet is very big and the man cannot put a fence and it is impossible for him. She can wait because she is the land (mother).

DR. B.R. AMBEDKAR.

Dr. B.R. Ambedkar Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

Dr B R Ambedkar Lesson Question Answer Question 1.

Ambedkar spent most of his life by ____

a) purchasing books

b) attending conferences

c) reading books

d) importing books

Ans:

c) reading books

Dr Br Ambedkar Lesson Notes Question 2.

Pick out the word in the first paragraph which means ‘a quality that makes a person or a thing different from another.’

Answer:

Trait

10th English Dr Br Ambedkar Lesson Notes Question 3.

How did the fourteenth amendment of the American Constitution benefit the Black Americans?

Answer:

The fourteenth amendment of the American constitution gave freedom to the Black Americans.

Dr Br Ambedkar Lesson Question Answer Question 4.

What did Mahatma Phule work for?

Answer:

Mahatma Phule was a devotee and worked for classless society and women’s upliftment.

Dr Br Ambedkar 10th Notes Question 5.

Mookanayak, Bahishkrit Bharat and Samata were ____

- a) Voice mails
- b) Newspapers
- c) Political parties

Ans:

b) Newspaper.

Dr Br Ambedkar 10th Lesson Notes Question 6.

Gandhiji termed the depressed classes as ____

Answer:

Harijan

Share Your Responses

10th Class English Dr Br Ambedkar Question Answer Question 1.

Draft is a banking term. How is the word used in the context of this lesson?

Answer:

Here the word 'Draft' is used as the meaning of make, write, Drafting committee means a committee set up to draft (write) the constitution of India.

Dr B R Ambedkar 10th Lesson Notes Question 2.

Dr. Ambedkar was not in the Congress party. Yet he was made the chairman of the drafting committee. Why?

Answer:

He was made the chairman of the drafting committee because of his undying faith in the dignity of leadership of the Indian National Congress and his capability of doing the task.

10th English Dr.B.R Ambedkar Notes Question 3.

He raised it 'brick by brick'. In this context, what was raised?

Answer:

In this context, he raised brick by brick was the examples and experiences of other nations and the distinctive needs of our society, which now stands as the Fundamental Rights in the constitution of Indian.

Dr B R Ambedkar Notes Question 4.

Who were the other notable members of the drafting committee?

Answer:

The other notable members of the drafting committee were Alladi Krishnaswami Iyyar, K.M. Munshi and. Gopaldaswami Ayyangar etc...

Dr B R Ambedkar 10th Lesson Question Answer Question 5.

Ambedkar had 'rare gifts' What were they? Can you think of your own 'gifts'? Share them with your class.

Answer:

Ambedkar had rare gifts like unraveling the most complicated legal concepts. And also he had tactfulness, frankness, and patience.

Ambedkar Lesson Notes Question 6.

The constitution is a fundamental document to both the ruler and the ruled. How?

Answer:

The constitution is a fundamental document to both the ruler and the ruled because it defines the powers of the three organs and the powers of the legislature against the citizens. It is dealing with fundamental rights also.

Share Your Responses

Dr Br Ambedkar Question Answer Question 1.

Nehru chose Ambedkar as a law minister for three reasons. What are they? (paragraph 7)

Answer:

The three reasons are

- 1. He had skills in the field of law and legislation.**
- 2. His vision of Social justice**
- 3. His own campaigns against social injustice.**

Dr Br Ambedkar SSLC Notes Question 2.

Are you aware of the facilities provided by the Social Welfare Department? Mention any two.

Answer:

Yes. The Social Welfare Department, as suggested by the name, strives for social welfare and justice. It ensures the welfare of the Scheduled Caste/Scheduled tribe, handicapped and marginalized sections of society. National Overseas Scholarship for the SCs/STs and Free Coaching Scheme for SC and OBC students are two of the many welfare schemes of the Department.

KSEEB Solutions For Class 10 English Question 3.

After independence, members of the Scheduled Castes have found doors opened to them. How?

Answer:

Since Independence, members of the scheduled castes have found doors opened to them. No legal bars exist for self – expression or self – advancement. They can enroll themselves in institutes of higher learning and enter public services. They occupy high offices of state and center. They also compete for the post of judges, ambassadors and governors. They have acquitted themselves creditably in all these positions of responsibility.

10th English Dr Br Ambedkar Notes Question 4.

All people should be given equal opportunities to prove themselves. How are the members of the Scheduled Castes proving themselves?

Answer:

All people including Scheduled castes should be given equal opportunities to prove themselves. No legal bars exist for self-expression or self – advancement. They can enroll in institutes of higher

learning and public services. They can prove themselves by participating and acquiring all these positions of responsibility.

Dr Br Ambedkar Lesson Extracts Pdf Question 5.

Babasaheb Ambedkar considers public agitation in free India as unconstitutional. Why?

Answer:

Ambedkar considers public agitation in free India as unconstitutional because the right to rebellion is recognized against a government without people's consent it should be a dictatorship such agitations invariably result in the loss of lives and Public property.

Dr Br Ambedkar Notes 10th Question 6.

Social discrimination still exists in India. Debate in the class.

Answer:

Practical Activity should be conducted in the class [not writing]

Share Your Responses

Dr Br Ambedkar Lesson Notes Pdf Question 1.

What were the opinions of the Buddha and Avvai regarding the caste divisions?

Answer:

The opinion of Buddha regarding the last divisions are

The noble and wholesome people and

The ignoble and unwholesome people.

The Tamil Poetess Avvai said that

The charitable who give and are superior

The misers who do not give and are inferior.

Dr Br Ambedkar English Notes Question 2.

Caste system in India is in a strong position because of ___[fill in the blank picking the answer from paragraph 11]

Answer:

Power structure.

Dr Br Ambedkar Question And Answer Question 3.

Why did the British magnify the caste distinctions?

Answer:

The British rulers magnify or exaggerated the caste distinctions to strengthen their control over us. So they started the policy of “Divide and Rule”.

Dr B R Ambedkar 10th Lesson Extracts Question 4.

The word ‘hegemony’ means __

- a) distinction**
- b) control**
- c) strength**

Answer:

- b) Control**

Dr Br Ambedkar 10th Lesson Extracts Question 5.

‘they brought about a veritable revolution in social thought.’

- a) who are ‘they’?**
- b) What ‘revolution’ is referred to here?**
- c) How did they bring about the revolution?**

Answer:

- a) They were Mahatma Gandhiji. and Dr. B.R. Ambedker.**
- b) The revolution referred here is repudiated (means deny) the caste system and to proclaim the oneness of the Hindu community.**
- c) Gandhiji brings the revolution by reminding the higher castes of their duty towards depression. Babasaheb did the same by reminding the depressed, classes about their inherent rights to equality with the higher and powerful costes.**

Questions And Answers On Br Ambedkar Question 6.

Why did Nehru describe Dr. Ambedkar as ‘a symbol of revolt’?

Answer:

Nehru described Ambedkar as ‘a symbol of revolt’ because Ambedkar had the courage and conviction to rouse up the depressed classes of society which had suffered for long in the past. By doing this, Ambedkar also ensured that people belonging to the higher classes did not grow complacent with the idea that with constitutional amendment everything will be fine for the depressed classes.

Think About The Text

Dr B R Ambedkar 10th Notes Question 1.

Ambedkar had a great thirst for books when he was a student, explain.

Answer:

Ambedkar was a voracious reader. His hunger for books was never satisfied. What is remarkable is that he bought books by sacrificing other needs. The author cites two instances to show what an avid reader Ambedkar was – in New York, where he was a student, he is said .to have bought 2000 old books. Later, when he went to London for the Second Round Table Conference he bought so many books that they had to be sent to India in 32 boxes. If others would have thought of bringing home attractive foreign goods, Ambedkar’s interest was solely in books.

Ambedkar Spent Most Of His Life In Question 2.

How did the fourteenth amendment to the U.S. Constitution and Mahatma Phule influence on Ambedkar?

Answer:

Instances of atrocities of the higher stratum of society against the lower stratum have been the sordid state of affairs in many countries. In America, if the blacks were discriminated against, in India people belonging to the scheduled castes, have been the victims of ill-treatment by the upper caste people. Ambedkar, who himself belonged to the suffering class, was deeply troubled by the gross injustice of the situation.

Naturally, he was profoundly influenced by the fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the USA, giving freedom to black Americans. It made him envision the same kind of freedom for the victims of discrimination, back home in India. Mahatma Phule’s attempts at a classless society also had an impact on Ambedkar and he started his crusade for the uplift of the downtrodden.

SSLC Dr Br Ambedkar Lesson Notes Question 3.

There were great luminaries on the Drafting Committee. Dr. Ambedkar is remembered as the pilot. Give reasons.

Answer:

As a chairman of the Drafting Committee, Dr. Ambedkar took many examples and experiences of other nations. He considered the need of our own brothers (society) he laid the points step by step. Other luminaries also helped in his work. But he worked a lot. He had the rare gift of most complicated legal concepts into simple language which can also be understood by common people. So he was rightly called “Pilot”.

Dr Br Ambedkar Lesson Question 4.

Write a short note on Dr.Ambedkar’s idea/perception of the three pillars of State.

Answer:

Dr. Ambedkar had a clear perception of the three pillars of the state. He realized that; the Jurisdiction of each should be clear and not hampered legal bars. He had a sense of the importance of the role of citizens. According to him, the constitution should define the position and powers of the three organs of the State-the executive, the Judiciary, and the legislature.

Dr B R Ambedkar 10th Lesson Question 5.

What are the significant observation of Dr. Ambedkar on the constitution?

Answer:

Dr. Ambedkar made significant observations. The Constitution is a fundamental document. It defines the position and power of the three organs viz., the executive, the legislative and the Judiciary. It also defines the powers of the organs against the citizens. Its main purpose is not merely to create the organs but to limit their authority to check, otherwise, there will be tyranny or oppression.

Dr Br Ambedkar 10th Class Question 6.

Nehru chose Dr. Ambedkar as the law minister. What might have prompted Nehru to do so?

Answer:

Dr. Ambedkar had talented skills in the field of law and legislation. He had a foresighted vision of Social Justice. Above all, he had succeeded in his own campaigns against social injustice. From all points of view, he deserved a person to choose as the law minister. Therefore Nehru chose him as the first law minister of free India.

Dr Ambedkar Notes Question 7.

What made Dr. Ambedkar describe the methods of Civil disobedience, Non-cooperation and Satyagraha as the “Grammar of anarchy”?

Answer:

Civil Disobedience, Non-Co-operation, and Satyagraha were not done as constitutional methods. Always the public agitations to achieve social justice through the methods of the constitution. So, According to him, the above agitations were called “Grammar of anarchy”.

Dr Br Ambedkar 10th Lesson Question 8.

How did Dr. Ambedkar and Mahatma Gandhi try to wipe out caste discrimination from India?

Answer:

The efforts of Dr. Ambedkar and Gandhi in wiping out caste discrimination and establishing an egalitarian society can be described as two sides of the same coin. In a divided India, suffering from the ‘Divide and Rule’ tactics of the British, the approaches of Ambedkar and the Mahatma were the unifying forces. If Gandhi tried to abolish the caste system by reminding the upper caste people of their duty towards the oppressed, Ambedkar goaded the oppressed to exercise their right to equality. Thus, together, the two great visionaries were the architects of Modern India with the vision of equality and fraternity.

Question 9.

Discuss with your friends and complete the web-chart given below

Answer:

1. Found the Books
2. First Law Minister
3. Symbol of Revolt
4. Chairman of the drafting committee
5. The pilot of Indian constitution.

Enrich Your Vocabulary

Task 1: Read the following paragraph and replace the underlined words appropriately with the words given below in brackets.

Children have special qualities. They can think and imagine in creative ways and are able to understand new things much better than their elders. But just by new ideas, nothing happens. Their ideas must have inborn strengths and stand the test of time. They should not become self-satisfied with their first steps of success.

[complacent, conceive, trait, perceive, inherent]

Use the words given in brackets in sentences of your own.

Words for underlined

1. traits
2. conceive
3. perceive
4. inherent
5. complacent

Own Sentences

1. This dog has very good smelling traits.
2. The cat conceived and gave birth to 3 kitten.
3. The children perceived German words very well
4. Patriotism should be an inherent quality of soldiers
5. I have done my Job with full of complacent.

Listen And Comprehend

Task 1: Answer these questions orally :

Question 1.

What information is Shreya giving her father?

Answer:

Shreya was giving the information that she wants to give a speech on Republic Day.

Question 2.

Is her father encouraging or discouraging her?

Answer:

Yes, Her father was encouraging her.

Question 3.

What does the father tell her about what at Constitution is?

Answer:

Her father told her that the constitution is a set of rules and regulations for all people living in India.

Question 4.

Should everybody obey the Consitution? How do you know?

Answer:

Her father told her that the constitution is a set of rules and regulations for all people living in India.

Speak well

Expressing gratitude

(A boy goes to a book shop to buy a book on folktales. The dialogue is given below)

Bookseller: Good afternoon, gentleman. What can I do for you?

Sharieff: Good afternoon, I'd like to buy some books on national leaders.

Book Seller: On national leaders? Sure, sir. If you don't mind, please have a look at the fourth alumni ah on your right.

Sharieff : (after going through some titles) Could you take them to put, please?

Book Seller: Of course (he takes them out and hands them over to sharieff)

Sharieff: Thank you. Ah! I need these three books. Will you please gift-wrap them?

Bookseller: With pleasure, (he does so)

Sharieff: How much should I pay?

Book Seller: We allow a 10% rebate.

Sharieff: That's very nice of you. So, I have to pay '240.

Book Seller: Yes. We also give you a diary as a free gift.

Sharieff: Thank you very much, (he pays the money)

Bookseller: You're welcome, (hands over the books and the gift)

These are the terms used to express gratitude.

Read And Respond

Task -1: I Read the poem. Note that every line of the poem is either suggestive or evocative, the* :s capable of making the readers imagine some pictures in mind. These poetic expressions are given in column 'A'. Read the poem carefully, read the expressions, and find out the line that evokes or suggested the pictures. Write the line number in column 'B' One example is given.

Ans:

2

4

6

1

3

5

Self-assessment

Read the statement and put a tick mark in the appropriate box.

Practice writing

Task – 1: Imagine you are booking a ticket to visit Mumbai. Give the following personal details as furnished below :

Learn grammar through communication

Task -1: Here are some sentences. Combine them using linkers given in brackets. One is done for you. e.g. It rained heavily. We reached home in time, (though) Though it rained heavily, we reached home in time.

Question 1.

There is a shortage of water. Some people are wasting it unthinkingly. (although)

Answer:

Although there is a shortage of water, some people are wasting it unthinkingly.

Question 2.

There was heavy traffic. We were delayed, (since).

Answer:

Since there was heavy traffic, we were delayed.

Question 3.

The students played for an hour. They attended to their studies later on. (and then)

Answer:

The students played for an hour and then they attended to their studies later on.

Question 4.

We expected a difficult question paper. The questions asked in the examination were easy. (but)

Answer:

We expected a difficult question paper but the questions asked in the examination were easy.

Question 5.

The flight was delayed. The weather was cloudy, (as)

Answer:

The flight was delayed as the weather was cloudy.

Question 6.

The student scored less marks. He did not study properly, (because)

Answer:

The student scored less marks because he did not study properly.

Task – 1: Refer to a dictionary and split the following words into their syllables.

1. probability → pro – ba – bi – li – ty

2. determination → de – ter – mi – na – tion

3. accept → ac – cept

4. canteen → can – teen

5. again → a – gain

6. conscience → con – science

7. idea → i – de – a

8. reflection → re – flee – tion

Dr. B.R. Ambedkar Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Question 1.

Sri R. Venkataraman wrote the book ____.

- a. Mooknayak
- b. Samata
- c. Dr.B.R. Ambedkar
- d. Mahatma

Answer:

- c. Dr.B.R. Ambedkar

Question 2.

Dr. Ambedkar was conferred ____ posthumously.

- a. Padma Vibhushan
- b. Bharath Ratna
- c. Doctorate
- d. Padma Bhushan

Answer:

- b. Bharath Ratna

Question 3.

Ambedkar was a __ reader.

- a. voracious
- b. silent
- c. fast
- d. talented

Answer:

- a. voracious

Question 4.

Ambedkar has an __ thirst for books

- a. ardent
- b. ideal
- c. imaginary
- d. insatiable

Answer:

- d. insatiable

Question 5.

In New York, he purchased about ___ books.

- a. science
- b. 2000 old
- c. political
- d. new

Answer:

- b. 2000 old

Question 6.

He bought __ of books from London.

- a. 10 boxes
- b. 15 boxes
- c. 32 boxes
- d. 30 boxes

Answer:

- c. 32 boxes

Question 7.

Fourteenth Amendment of the constitution of the USA gave freedom to the ___.

- a. Americans
- b. Indians
- c. Negros

d. Black Americ

Answer:

d. Black Americ

Question 8.

Ambedkar was greatly influenced by the life and work of ___

a. Mahatma

b. Mahatma Phule

c. Gandhiji

d. Venkataraman

Answer:

b. Mahatma Phule

Question 9.

Ambedkar started the newspapers such as Mooknayak, Bahishkrit Bhairs it and ___

a. Saitnata

b. Times of India

c. Popular

d. Herald

Answer:

a. Saitnata

Question 10.

Ambedkar set up the institution such as ___

a. Depressed home

b. Hitaka Rini sabha

c. Laboui home

d. Bahislil dit Bharat

Answer:

b. Hitaka Rini sabha

Question 11.

Babasaheb was elected To Bombay Legislative Assembly under the constitution of India Act ___

- a. 1919
- b. 1927
- c. 1929
- d. 1935

Answer:

- d. 1935

Question 12.

Gandhiji called Depressed classes as ___

- a. Superior
- b. inferior
- c. Harijans
- d. Hindus

Answer:

- c. Harijans

Question 13.

Indian National Congress and Ambedkar as the ___ of the Drafting Committee.

- a. officer
- b. chairman
- c. pilot
- d. Adviser

Answer:

- b. chairman

Question 14.

The constitution is ___ document.

- a. new
- b. written
- c. fundamental

d. descriptive

Answer:

c. fundamental

Question 15.

___ chose Dr.Ambedkar to be the first law minister.

a. R. Venkataraman

b. President

c. Prime minister

d. Jawaharlal Nehru

Answer:

d. Jawaharlal Nehru

Question 16.

After becoming Law Minister and Lawmaker he was called as ___

a. Pioneer

b. Padma Bhushan

c. Modern Manu

d. Doctor.

Answer:

d. Doctor.

Question 17.

Ambedkar described the civil disobedience, non-cooperation and Satyagraha as the ___

a. grammar of anarchy

b. rebellion

c. revolution

d. opposition

Answer:

a. grammar of anarchy

Question 18.

British followed the policy of __

- a. Caste-system**
- b. Social injustice**
- c. Divide and Ruled**
- d. Veritable revolution**

Answer:

- c. Divide and Ruled**

Question 19.

Babasaheb passed away in December ____.

- a. 1958**
- b. 1956**
- c. 1948**
- d. 1950**

Answer:

- b. 1956**

Question 20.

Jawaharlal Nehru described Babasaheb as __

- a. Modern man**
- b. Leader of Depressed class**
- c. a Symbol of revolt**
- d. Patriot**

Answer:

- c. a Symbol of revolt**

I. Match the following :

Answer:

1 – e

2 – f

3 – d

4 – c

5 – a

6 – b

II. Match the following :

Answer:

1 – e

2 – f

3 – a

4 – b

5 – c

6 – d

III. Match the following :

Answer:

1 – e

2 – a

3 – b

4 – c

5 – d

III. Give one-word or phrase for the following:

Question 1.

Very eager for knowledge.

Answer:

Voracious

Question 2.

that which cannot be satisfied.

Answer:

insatiable

Question 3.

be transferred or passed to somebody.

Answer:

devolve

Question 4.

never giving up.

Answer:

indefatigable

Question 5.

ability to see, hear, understand.

Answer:

perception

Question 6.

not hampered legal bars.

Answer:

untrammelled

Question 7.

deeply rooted.

Answer:

entrenched

Question 8.

control by one country or organization.

Answer:

hegemony

Question 9.

Advantageous position.

Answer:

vantage point

Question 10.

liable to change rapidly

Answer:

volatile

Question 11.

Good for one's health or well being.

Answer:

wholesome

Question 12.

Calmly satisfied with oneself.

Answer:

complacent

Answer the following questions in a word or a sentence each:

Question 1.

Which was the one trait that marked Dr. Ambedkar not only during his student days but also throughout his life?

Answer:

The trait of reading voraciously was the one trait that marked Dr. Ambedkar not only during his student days but also throughout his life.

Question 2.

What was the amendment to the U.S. Constitution that influenced Ambedkar?

Answer:

The fourteenth amendment to the Constitution of the USA, giving freedom to the Black Americans, influenced Ambedkar.

Question 3.

What did Mahatma Phule advocate?

Answer:

Mahatma Phule advocated a classless society and women's uplift.

Question 4.

Which were the institutions set up by Ambedkar?

Answer:

Hitakarini Sabha and the Independent Labour Party of India were the institutions set up by Ambedkar.

Question 5.

Who was appointed as the chairman of the Drafting Committee of the Constituent Assembly?

Answer:

Ambedkar was appointed as the chairman of the Drafting Committee of the Constituent Assembly.

Question 6.

Who was the Constitutional Adviser to the Constituent Assembly?

Answer:

B.N. Rau was the Constitutional Advisor to the Constituent Assembly.

Question 7.

Who is hailed as the modern Manu?

Answer:

Ambedkar is hailed as the modern Manu.

Question 8.

What is the consequence of the right to rebellion against a government in a democracy?

Answer:

The consequence of the right to rebellion against a government in a democracy is the loss of lives and public property.

Question 9.

Under which policy did the British rulers try to divide the people on the basis of caste?

Answer:

Under the 'Divide and Rule' policy, the British rulers tried to divide the people on the basis of caste.

Question 10.

In which year did Ambedkar pass away?

Answer:

Ambedkar passed away in 1956.

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

What progress has been made in providing equality of opportunities to the scheduled castes?

Answer:

In independent India many attempts have been made to provide equal opportunities to the scheduled castes. Scheduled castes are free of the legal bars for self-expression or self-advancement. There are special schemes that have made it possible for the scheduled castes to be educated and thereby occupy high offices of state, both at the Centre and in the States.

Question 2.

What was the difference in the methods of Ambedkar and Gandhiji in repudiating caste and proclaiming the oneness of the Hindu community?

Answer:

Gandhiji and Ambedkar had different agendas. But together they complemented each other. If Gandhiji appealed to the privileged sections of society to honour their duty towards the depressed classes, Ambedkar encouraged the underprivileged to fight for their rights. Together they could bring about a revolutionary change in society.

Answer the following questions in 6-8 sentences each:

Question 1.

What progress has been achieved in the upliftment of the scheduled castes since independence?

Answer:

Since independence, much progress has been made in providing equality of opportunities to the scheduled castes. Doors, which had been closed for centuries, are being opened for members of the scheduled castes. No legal bars exist today for self-expression or self-advancement. They are enrolling themselves in institutes of higher learning and entering public services. They have come to occupy high offices of State, both at the Centre and in the States. Judges, ambassadors and governors have been drawn from their ranks.

Question 2.

How did Gandhiji and Ambedkar bring about a revolution in social thought?

Answer:

Mahatma Gandhi and Dr. Ambedkar repudiated the caste system and proclaimed the oneness of the Hindu community. Gandhiji reminded the higher castes of their duty towards the depressed classes while Dr. Ambedkar reminded the lower castes of their inherent rights to equality with the higher and more powerful castes. Gandhiji stressed the duties while Dr. Ambedkar stressed the rights. Together, they brought about a veritable revolution in social thought.

Question 3.

How has the Constitution helped the depressed classes in India?

Answer:

Ambedkar was inspired by the fourteenth amendment to the U.S. Constitution and by Mahatma Phule and strove to uplift the Depressed Classes in India through the constitutional rights. Our Constitution offers equality of opportunities to the people of India and that's, why Scheduled Castes find doors, which had been closed to them for centuries, being opened. Our Constitution gives freedom to all when it comes to the question of self-expression and self-advancement.

Question 4.

What are the significant observations of Ambedkar on the Constitution?

Answer:

Being a visionary, Ambedkar had a clear understanding of how the Constitution of a country should function. He knew that the Constitution is a fundamental document that explains the extent of power a State could enjoy through its three organs – the executive, the judiciary and the legislature. He knew that the citizens would be bound by the power of the executive and the power of the legislature. But he also knew that the State itself was bound by the Constitution in not misusing its authority over its citizens.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

“While in the U.S.A., he was drawn to the fourteenth amendment to the Constitution”.

- a) Who is the ‘he’ referred to?**
- b) Why was the Constitution amended?**
- c) Why was the person drawn towards it?**

Answer:

- a) Ambedkar.**
- b) The Constitution was amended to give freedom to Black Americans.**
- c) The person was drawn towards it because he saw a parallel situation in India where the Depressed Classes had no equality.**

Question 2.

One stressed the duties, the other stressed the rights. Together they brought about a veritable revolution in social thought.

- a) Who is the ‘one’ referred to here?**
- b) Who is the ‘other’?**

c) What revolution did they bring about?

Answer:

a) Gandhiji.

b) Ambedkar.

c) They brought about a revolution in social thought which until then did not consider the depressed class equal to the higher caste.

Question 3.

“His flair for legislative work became evident to the whole nation

a) Whose flair became evident?

b) When did it become evident?

c) Pick out the word from the given statement which means ‘a natural ability to do something well\

Answer:

a) Dr. Ambedkar’s.

b) When he contributed to the debates in the Bombay Legislative Assembly.

c) Flair.

DR. B.R. AMBEDKAR SUMMARY IN ENGLISH

We can recognise one important character in Dr. Ambedkar i.e., his love about books. He was very eager to knowledge and reading books throughout his life. He was fond of books that we can see by two incidents. One was he purchased 2000 old books in New York and he bought 32 boxes of books at the time of Second Round Table conference from London. For this, he was reduced his daily needs.

When he was in the U.S.A. the Black Americans get freedom by the 14th Amendment of their constitution. He was very much influenced by this and think about Depressed classes in India. He was greatly influenced by the life and work of Mahatma Phule. At that time Phule was working about a classless society and women’s up to life. Babasaheb decided to devote all his time and talents to improve the conditions of underprivileged people in our country. For this, he started newspapers like Mooknayak, Bahishkrit Bharath and Samatha.

All these were the authentic voices of the Depressed Classes. Hitakarini Sabha was set up by him and the Independent labor party of India became the vehicles of the change. Meanwhile, Gandhiji was pioneering his reform of India society especially the up life of Depressed classes and he called them as Harijans. Answer: According to Constitution of India Act 1935 Babasaheb was elected to Bombay

Legislative Assembly. He made effective Contributions to the debates in the Assembly on a variety of Subjects became evident to the whole nation.

OBJ:

The Constituent Assembly of India afforded Dr. Ambedkar and requested to save on the Drafting committee as a chairman, though he was not in the congress, though he was not in the congress. This is because of his foresightedness and objective leadership. Ambedkar as the chairman of the Drafting committee anticipated (expected) every conceivable requirement of the experiences of other nations and the needs of aver society, he raised brick by brick and constructed the beautiful constitution to India, now it stands as the Fundamental Rights.

For his support other intellectual persons also contribute their skills. They were Alladi Krishna Swamy Iyyar, K.M. Munshi, and N.Gopala swami Ayyangar. No doubt that Ambedkar was the pilot of this magnificent task. Dr. Ambedkar was to explain to the Assembly with a combination to tact, firmness and utmost patience. He had a rise gift of unraveling the most complicated legal concepts in a language. B.N. Rau had the quality of never giving up the last was the adviser who performed this task matchlessly.

Dr. Ambedkar had a clear perception of the three pillars of state such as the legislature, the executive and the judiciary. The Jurisdiction of each should be clear and not to restricted and he has known the importance of the role of citizens. He made some significant observations. The constitution is a fundamental document. This defines the position and power of the three organs of the state. It also defines the powers of the executive and legislature as against the citizens. The purpose of a constitution is to create the organs of the state and also to limit their authority because if no limitation was imposed upon the authority of the organs, these will be completely unjust and bad rule or cruelty may happen.

Jawaharlal Nehru, the first prime minister of Independent India choose Dr. Ambedkar to be the first law minister. This was a recognition of Dr. Ambedkar's skill in the field of law and legislation. It was a tribute to his vision of social justice and infused into the new Indian polity. Truly it was the tribute to the success of his own campaigns against social injustice. Nobody could have dreamt that one box in Mahar family would be a law minister, lawmaker and get the title 'Modem Manu'.

Since Independence, much progress has been achieved in providing equality of opportunities to the Scheduled Castes. This has been closed to them for many centuries being opened. They have come and occupy both central and state govt offices, Judges ambassadors, etc... They have acquitted themselves in major positions of responsibility.

Much remains yet to be done on the social plane. The Annual reports of the commission for scheduled castes and scheduled tribes list several of the law, notwithstanding the law book and the members have been discriminated against. When social discrimination is completely eliminated from our society them Ambedkar's work will be really complete.

To achieve social goals and objectives through constitutional methods. he described the civil disobedience, non – cooperation and satyagraha as “grammar of anarchy”. These methods were used in foreign Government but in a democratic country which is based on free and fair elections should do on people's consent. If it not, such operations invariably result in the loss of lives and public property.

2500 years ago Buddha said about last Systems in India that the only two classes of people such that the noble and wholesome second is ignoble and unwholesome. Tamil poetess Awai proclaimed that the

charitable who give and they are superior on the contrary the misers who do not give are inferior. The great sages and saints revealed the hollowness of the caste system and preached that all the human beings are same and equal, classes are determined by their characters not by birth.

When the British ruled our Country. They followed caste distinction because of their benefits, so they followed the policy of “Divide and Rule” Mahatma Gandhi and Ambedkar deny or opposed the caste system and proclaim, the oneness of the Hindu community. Gandhiji reminding the duty of higher caste to depressed classes and Ambedkar reminding the innate rights to equality. Both of them brought a revolution in social thought.

Jawaharlal Nehru described Ambedkar as “a symbol of revolt” in the Lok – Sabha when Ambedkar was passed away in December 1956. Nehru said that whether we agreed with him or not in matter but we should appreciate his perseverance and persistence and help in rousing up of depressed classes. It was sad because such a great soul has passed away. We should hope that the day will come that Ambedkar’s dream of Samata become a reality.

THE SONG OF INDIA.

The Song of India Poem Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

The Song Of India Notes Question 1.

Identify the two speakers in the Poem, what does the speaker want to sing about?

Answer:

The two speakers are the poet and his mother. The poet or offspring wanted to sing about his country for his mother India.

The Song Of India Question 2.

What are the epics? Why does the poet call the temples as ‘epics in stone?’

Answer:

Epics are long poems, typically the ones derived from ancient oral tradition, narrating the deeds and adventures of heroic or legendary figures or the past history of a nation. The poet calls temples ‘epics in stone’ because each temple has a story to unfold. Moreover, on the walls of each temple, there are numerous sculptures narrating many a story.

10th English The Song Of India Notes Question 3.

Who does the poet mean by ‘of your children that died to call their own?’

Answer:

The Soldiers who guard our mother and motherland are mother's children and they sacrificed their lives for the sake of their motherland. So they are her own.

The Song Of India Questions And Answers Question 4.

The Song Of India Questions And Answers What, according to the poet, is the contribution of the seers and prophets?

Answer:

The seers and prophets have contributed their valuable lessons and experiences to others.

Song Of India Notes Question 5.

Why is the poet 'querulous'? What does he want to do?

Answer:

The poet wanted to sing about the achievements and progress made by the countrymen. He asks his mother (motherland) if she wished to hear about the dams and lakes, about steel mills or of the atomic age the mother asks him to sing songs about 'strikes' and about the leaders who emerged after such 'strikes' (revolutions).

So the poet asks her in a querulous (complaining) voice if there were no songs which he could sing for her that he could sing wholeheartedly, a song that is pure and which will remain in memory for a long time.

The Song Of India Poem Question And Answer Question 6.

How is he answered? Describe the vision. (Refer stanza 4)

Answer:

The poet was answered by a wonderful vision. A vision of a new and bright future. In the vision, he saw the mother (motherland) rise gloriously against the blue sky. The three milky – white oceans, ie., the Arabian Sea, Bay of Bengal and the Indian Ocean, rose and fell with steady powerful motions. (There was calm on the sea). Their waves sent forth a wonderful and illuminated her. She seemed to sit of this illuminating light to write the 'book of marrow'. (a new reign, a new future').

She foresaw a new 'destiny', a new bright future like the bright sun – god, who destroyed darkness with his powerful rays, this new future wiped out the sorrow of her people. This new future will arrive like a 'clear dawn'. In this new future, the sorrows and hardships of her people will flee like a nightmare (bad dream). This new future (sunbeam) will act like the 'Hand that saves' her people.

The Song Of India Poem Notes Pdf Question 7.

What do the night, the sun god and the clear dawn represent?

Answer:

Here the night represents all sorrow the Sun God represents the hand that saves and clear dawn represent the bright future and calmness and the good things.

Read And Appreciate

The Song Of India Question Answers Question 1.

What is the picture of India that you get in stanza 1 of the poem?

Answer:

The first stanza, like the stanzas to follow, offers a mixed picture of India. India is described in terms of its physical features which are beautiful, be it the majestic Himalayas, be it the magnificent seas, be it the clear sunrise. However, there are cracks in the beauty of the country as there is poverty and squalor all over. Hence, the Mother challenges the poet and tells him that he cannot write a song of praise without reckoning with these negative strains.

The Song Of India Question Answer Question 2.

How does the poet describe the Mother's anger? Name the figure of speech used in stanza 2.

Answer:

The poet uses two similes to describe the anger of the Mother. He says that the angry words of the Mother fell against his ears like the powerful sound of the bell and they flew about him like huge white birds. Thus the poet uses both aural and visual images to describe the wrath of the Mother.

The Song Of India Poem Notes Question 3.

Explain the lines 'A song bathed in the stainless blue un vaporing in the void.'

Answer:

'Stainless blue' refers to the clear sea. The metaphor refers to a song of pure joy that is free of negativity. The phrase 'Unvapouring in the void' can mean crystal clear, without the mist in the openness of the sky. On the whole, this is also a reference to the possibility of singing a song of pure joy, free of ugliness and devoid of doubt.

Song Of India Poem Question 4.

What does 'the Motherland writing the Book of the Morrow' signify?

Answer:

It means the poet's desire or wish was the motherland or mother sitting on the throne and write the future of our country. She wrote in the book of the morrow. Which signifies the earth's destiny.

The Song Of India Question And Answer Question 5.

Write in brief your vision of the future of India.

Answer:

According to the poet, the future of our country can open up on mothers' foreheads. It is like the earth's destiny. All the sorrows and suffering came to an end and the new things and views will come and make the people happy. The Sun God will protect the earth and saves all.

I envision a very bright future for India. An India where there all it people work hard for the development of the country. All Indians should be happy and live harmoniously with each other. There should be no discrimination and all the people should be treated as equals.

The Song of India Additional Questions and Answers

The Song Of India Poem Question Answers Multiple Choice Questions

The Song Of India Poem Question 1.

The poet uses all of the following techniques except

- A) Dialogue**
- B) Contrast**
- C) Refrain**
- D) Exaggeration**

Answer:

- D) Exaggeration**

The Song Of India Kseeb Solutions Question 2.

The poem does not end with a note of

- A) sarcasm**
- B) pessimism**
- C) optimism**
- D) fanaticism**

Answer:

- D) fanaticism**

Answer the following questions in a word or a sentence each:

The Song Of India 10th Standard Notes Question 1.

Which snow-peaked mountains are being referred to in the poem ‘The Song of India’?

Answer:

The Himalayas.

The Song Of India Poem In English Question 2.

Name the book that the Mother writes.

Answer:

The Book of the Morrow.

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

Why did the children have to die to call the Mother their own?

Answer:

The children had to sacrifice their lives in the freedom struggle against the British who had colonized India. It is ironic that the children had to claim their mother as their own. This means we had to claim our own land after being under the British Rule.

Question 2.

How does the poet praise India being developed in industry and technology?

Answer:

The poet is ready to sing praises of industrially and technologically developed India as he has witnessed dams, lakes, steel mills, and shipbuilding yards. He is, confident that the hard-working men of India can put India on the glorious page of the atomic age.

Question 3.

What does the poet V.K. Gokak want to sing about his Motherland?

Answer:

The poet wants to sing in praise of mother India. He wants to sing a song of praise of the snow-peaked Himalayas that protect the country, the three seas that make India a peninsula, and the sunrise that heralds new dawn replacing the dark night.

Answer the following questions in 5-6 sentences each:

Question 1.

How does the poem present the ills or problems affecting our country?

Answer:

The poem juxtaposes the strengths and weaknesses of the country. If the strengths are mentioned by the poet as the possible themes for his song of praise of the motherland, the ills are voiced by the Mother herself as the spokes in the wheel of progress. The two voices make it very clear to the poet that India as a country has enough reasons to be both proud and ashamed of. India has natural resources, manpower, patriotism, magnificent temples and technological prowess; yet India also has beggars and lepers, filth and dirt, ignorance and helplessness, revolts and strikes. Thus for everything that is beautiful, there is something that is ugly; for everything that is healthy, there is something that is unwholesome. The poet employs the technique of contrasts to highlight this ambivalence of India.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

Sing of the beggar and the leper That swarm my streets.

- a) Whose streets are being referred to?
- b) What does the word 'swarm' indicate?
- c) What, does the poet want to sing about?

Answer:

- a) India's.
- b) It indicates the large numbers of beggars and lepers that are found on the streets of India.
- c) The poet wants to sing of the Himalayas, the seas and the dawn.

THE SONG OF INDIA POEM SUMMARY IN ENGLISH

This is one of the popular poems of the poet. Though he was a poet, he was also a patriotic person. This is a simple poem, here the poet describes a person towards his motherland. This word The language of the poem is versatile, flow like between he/she (poet) with their mother. He/She asked their mother that they can sing for her. They questioned their mother that what type of song they want to sing? They explained that they want to sing about the Himalayas, their snowbound peaks or the three great oceans such as the Bay of Bengal, the Arabian Sea and the Indian ocean which wash her feet or the beautiful dawn with its golden touch of nature.

For this, the mother said in a calm voice. She wants the song of the beggar, leper or any untrodden people. Or the crowd of the streets, impure or dirty places or any secluded places. The son/daughter (poet) ignores their mother's request and again asked about the topic of the Song. They continue their talk asking about the song of rock-cut temples, Epics in stone or sacrifice of her children and her own children or the inspired persons, famous prophets or the great persons who made great tasks or any worthy pilgrims.

Hearing the sons/daughter's words, mother get upset and angrily she asked to sing about millions of people who toiled and kept their life to a great cause, the experienced old people or ignorant people or helpless children who were very meek and dwelt in dark places. These words make the author that his heartbeat increased and the words heard a sound of a bell and make him emotional. This situation is like a great white bird flew in a pitiful manner. He/she become very nervous and asked about the topic of the poem Even though he was afraid to question her but believed in his work, again he requested her what type of songs she liked whether he can sing about the dams and lakes or any steel mills (factories and Industries) or shipbuilding yards like Vishakapattanam or any great technologies or any great recognized events or any atomic incidents etc.,

For this mother rejected and said you may sing on these topics but you can sing about the early and the important strikes, brave men and their goal, their achievements or any class wars and their consequences. The poet complained and in a humble condition, he/she questioned that they could n't sing for her wholeheartedly and in pure love? He/she sang for her. That song was bathed in the stainless blue that means it is very touching and appears into nothingness.

At that time the mother stands. That scene is really extraordinary. She looks like this. Mother was decorated by blue sky, her dress is marvellous, milk-white oceans revolve around her. The waves of the oceans were entering and moved with power and make her sit on the lighted throne and she wrote the book of Morrow. Her forehead opened like earth luck. The Sun God eradicate all sorrows. There was a clear down. It was like a nightmare that fled the night and the Sunbeam was glowing on the leaves, flowers, and plants. All the nature looks more beautiful and saved by the sun – beam's unseen hand. Here the Poet's intention is that the time will come to establish the new ideas. The poet always encourages new thoughts and ideas.

THE CONCERT.

The Concert Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

The Concert Lesson Notes Question 1.

Which word in the first paragraph describes the manner of the girl when she saw the newspaper?

Answer:

'excitedly'

The Concert Lesson Questions And Answers Question 2.

do you think the mother cautioned the girl?

Answer:

Mother cautioned the girl because her son was suffering from cancer. He was in the last stage of his life. His body was very weak and he needed sleep and complete rest. In addition to that, he was also fond of music especially Sitar. If he heard the news, it would disturb him.

The Concert Lesson Question 3.

'We mustn't miss the chance',

a) What chance did the boy not like to miss? Why? Do you think the boy would get a chance in the future?

Answer:

The chance that the boy wouldn't like to miss is listening to Pandit Ravi Shankar's Sitar recital. The boy had always wanted to hear and see Pandit Ravi Shankar, but had never got the chance. We do not know whether the boy would get the chance to hear Ravi Shankar again. We cannot look into the future and say what would happen in the future. The boy may or may not get the chance.

The Concert Lesson Notes Pdf Question 4.

Imagine you were the mother of the boy; would you have reacted differently in the situation? If so, how?

Answer:

Generally, Anant's mother reacted correctly. If we think differently, we should make some special arrangements for him and give him an opportunity to listen and see Pandit Ravishankar. Because it was his great desire and our duty is to fulfill.

The Concert Lesson 10th Class Notes Question 5.

Read the third paragraph. He raised himself up without any help. The mother murmured with 'a catch in her throat' on seeing him. What does this suggest about the condition of the boy? Read the fourth Paragraph and answer.

Answer:

It is clear that the boy suffers from some serious illness and has been bedridden. The fact that the mother is emotionally moved to see that the boy raised himself without any help suggests that the boy was dependent on others for physical activities.

Share your Responses :

The Concert Lesson Notes Question 1.

For a moment, Smita had forgotten something. What was it?

Answer:

Smita, a moment had forgotten that her brother was very ill.

The Concert Notes 10th Class Question 2.

In what way was truly frightening to Smita?

Answer:

Smita had known that Anant was going to die. The word cancer had hung in the air, her brother was dying of cancer. This truth was frightening Smita.

The Concert Lesson 10th Class In English Question 3.

Do you consider Anant a talented boy? Justify with support from the text.

Answer:

According to the text, Anant was a talented boy. At the beginning of his music career, he was able to compose his own tunes. His family was also astonished means he was really talented. In addition to that, he was the best player in Table-Tennis and the fastest runner in his school.

10th English The Concert Notes Question 4.

‘They had come with high hopes’.

- a. What were their ‘ high hopes’?
- b. Do you think their hopes would be fulfilled? Support your answer.
- c. Doctors said something to the parents. Were those words of hope or words of despair (para.6)
- d. ‘They did not voice their fears’. Who does the word ‘they stand for?’
 - i) doctors
 - ii) friends
 - iii) family members, (choose the right answer). (Para.6)

Answer:

- a) They had come with hopes in the miracles of modern science. They hoped that Anant would be cured in the hospital and bounce back to normal life, and even take part in the table tennis tournament.
- b) If we were to go by the medical records, we have to say that their hopes wouldn’t be fulfilled because doctors had given up their hope of curing the boy. They had asked the parents to take the boy home as they were under the impression that no treatment would help the boy. However, we cannot rule out the possibilities of a miraculous recovery which might fulfill the hopes of the parents.
- c) The doctors told the parents to take the boy home and give him all that he liked. These are certainly words of despair because the doctors will come up with such advice only when they know that the patient cannot be cured and it is better to indulge him and make him happy rather than follow a strict regimen.
- d) iii) family members.

The Concert Lesson Extracts Question 5.

‘Her eyes filled with tears’. Were they tears of happiness or sorrow ? Give reasons.

Answer:

They are definitely tears of sorrow. When her brother says that the opportunity of hearing Pandit Ravi Shankar is the chance of a lifetime it’s ironic because the boy is not left with much of his lifetime. The sister who knows that the days of her brother are numbered cannot overcome her sorrow and her eyes are filled with tears.

The Concert Lesson 10th Class Question 6.

‘Suddenly a daring thought came to her’. Can you guess what thought Smita had?

Answer:

The daring thought must be to fulfill the desire of her brother of listening to Pandit Ravi Shankar. The sister must have decided to give her brother what the brother thought was the chance of a lifetime. How exactly she planned to do it is not known to the readers at this point in time.

Share your Responses :

The Concert English Lesson Question 1.

The word ‘gasp’, according to the dictionary, suggests – surprise or pain. Which meaning is relevant in this context? (Para.10)

Answer:

The meaning of the ‘gasp’ in this context is a pain.

The Concert 10th Lesson Question 2.

As Smita sat listening to the music, she was spellbound. But all the while, her mind was echoing something else. What was that?

Answer:

As Smita sat listening to the music, she was spellbound. But all the while, her mind was echoing the plan she had decided on the evening remained firmly in her mind.

Concert Lesson Question 3.

Why does the writer use the word ‘wriggled’ to describe Smita’s movement?

Answer:

There was a great crowd and she was more anxious. Her heartbeat was loud and she felt her knees were weak. So she cannot walk straight but she moved in a wriggled way.

The Concert By Shanta Rameshwar Rao Summary Question 4.

Smita’s nervousness is suggested by the phrase ‘her heart beating loudly’ in paragraph 12. Identify two more phrases that describe a similar state in the next paragraph.

Answer:

The two more phrases that describe Smita’s nervousness are

(i) her knees felt weak

(ii) her tongue dried.

The Concert Lesson By Shanta Rameshwar Rao Question 5.

Did Smita tell what she had in her mind to the musicians? Who responded to her request immediately. What was the response?

Answer:

Yes, Smita told completely what she had in her mind to the musicians were Immediately Ustad Allah Rakha responded to her request. The response was the next morning they would perform for the boy (her brother).

The Concert Story Question 6.

Do you think the response of the artists was unusual? If not, why?

Answer:

Yes, the response of the artists was unusual. Generally, great artists are always busy and they had no time to listen or attend these types of requests. But his was a special case and these artists were very generous, they showed their humanity. Really it was appreciable.

10th English Lesson The Concert Question 7.

The neighbours could not believe their eyes. Why do you think they felt like this?

Answer:

The neighbours could not believe their eyes, because Pandit Ravi Shankar was very famous artist and very busy. It was very difficult to take his call-sheet. How could they believe such a great person could come to this poor dwelling and gave a concert.

KSEEB Class 10 English Solutions Question 8.

Read the last paragraph, which very effectively but briefly describes the end. Exchange your feedings with your partner.

Answer:

The last paragraph evokes in the readers a mixed response. On the one hand it's heartening to know that the wish of the ailing boy is fulfilled. On the other, it's heartbreaking to know that the boy died while listening to his favourite Sitar music. However, Smita, her parents, the musicians and all the dear ones of the boy would have moments of satisfaction of fulfilling what can be termed the last desire of the boy.

The Concert Lesson Summary Question 9.

Can you say that the concert was entertaining to Smita? Justify your answer.

Answer:

Yes, it was more than entertaining for Smita because when she listened to the music, it was as if the gates of enchantment and wonder were opening. She had listened to music in a spellbound state. However, we cannot forget the fact that one part of her kept remembering the wish of her brother and

the anxiety of not knowing whether the maestro would agree to come and play for the boy must have been agonising for Smita.

The Concert Lesson Summary In Kannada Question 10.

Smita was nervous as she stood before the wizard. Which sentence suggests this?

Answer:

Smita was nervous as she stood before the wizard. This suggests in the following sentences.

- i) her heart beating loudly.**
- ii) her knees felt weak.**
- iii) her tongue dry.**

Question 11.

Did Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha perform in the boy's house? Do you think this was an unusual incident? If yes, give reasons.

Answer:

Yes, it was certainly an unusual incident. We do not expect such distinguished artistes to give private performances. In fact, getting their dates even for public performances is an uphill task. Moreover, Smita's family is not an influential or wealthy family. Aunt Sushila's apartment was a small one. All these reasons make the incident extraordinary.

Think About The Text

Question 1.

Do you like the story? Why? I like/don't like, because.....(One reason is given. You may give as many other reasons as you like)

Answer:

I like this story because

- a) This is a story about music.**
- b) This is a real story.**
- c) This story has a good feel.**
- d) This is a story about a great person.**
- e) This story emphasizes the humanity and kindness.**
- f) This story shows compassion.**

Question 2.

In your opinion, which words in the list below describe Anant's character or state? Write Yes/No in the space given. [Refer to a dictionary for the words that you are not sure of]

The boy is

- a. energetic No**
- b. robust No**
- c. aesthetic Yes**
- d. imaginative No**
- e. confident Yes**

Question 3.

Look at the following phrases in the lesson. They are description Categorise them in columns 'A' and 'B' appropriately, {spellbound; unfolding the gates of enchantment; plaintive notes; fast twinkling ones' first notes; wonder; dream; unfolding ragas}.

Answer:

Question 4.

Ustad Sahib and Pandit Ravi Shankar agreed to perform for the boy. What made them agree to do so? What would have you done if you were the musician?

Answer:

Ustad Sahib and Pandit Ravi Shankar agreed to perform for the boy. The boy was in the last stage of his life. His last desire was this. And he was not able to come and attend the concert. Because of his pitiable condition, they agreed to do so. Whoever may be in that situation not only I, everyone should do the same.

Question 5.

What arrangement would you make if Pandit Ravi Shankar and Allah Rakha were coming to your house? [You may include in your answer such arrangements. one example is given. Think of others and write them in the bubbles]. Note: Answer need not be the same for all.

Answer:

Question 6.

Do you like the ending of the story? Why? If you don't, how would you like to end it?

Answer:

Question 7.

Suppose you are Smita and invite Pandit Ravi Shankar (PRS) to your home. Imagine the conversation that follows and write it. Some clues are given.

You (Smita): Good evening sir, May I have a word with you, please?

PRS: Well

You: My brother Anant is a big fan of yours.

PRS: I'm glad to see him, has he come here?

You: No, he can't Sir. He is bed-ridden from cancer.

PRS: I'm sorry to hear this. How can I help you?

Would you come with me to see him

PRS : (looking at others) What do you say?

You: Please, I beg you all to come and play for him

Mustached man: Are you joking? Do you know whom you are talking to? Don't bother him with your silly talk.

PRS: Sh! {Silencing him) Be quiet what shall we do Ustad?

Allah Rakha : (after some thought) Don't weep. Don't worry, child We'll be performing tomorrow.

Question 8.

In the course of the story, who do you consider to be more worried, Smita or Anant? Have a discussion with the partner / in-group / in the class.

Answer:

In the course of the story, Smita worried more.

Question 9.

Some incidents in the story are given in a jumbled order. Rearrange them as they occur in the story.

- a) Smita bit her lip in self-reproach. (P)**
- b) A large mustached man gave a long boring speech. (P)**
- c) Smita read the newspaper and got excited. (P)**
- d) Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha started playing in the boy's house. (P)**
- e) Smita was lost in her thoughts in the park (P)**
- f) Mother said, "This is not the last time they are going to play" (P)**
- g) Anant said. "It's the chance of a lifetime'. (P)**

Answer:

c

g

a

f

e

b

d

Question 10.

a) Identify the paragraphs in which the incidents stated above occur.

Answer:

1 is in paragraph 1

2 is in paragraph 4

3 is in paragraph 5

4 is in paragraph 6

5 is in paragraph 8

6 is in paragraph 11

7 is in paragraph 16

b) Read each paragraph again and summarise them in your own words.

Answer:

Self-assessment

Question 11.

Match the following:

Answer:

- 1. The person who discouraged the girl was the mustached man.**
- 2. The person who made the request was the girl, Smita.**
- 3. The person who gave the consent finally was Pandit Ravi Shankar.**
- 4. The person who suggested the time of the concert was Ustad Allah Rakha.**

Question 12.

Self Assessment

Task 1: Complete the crossword with the help of the following clues. Across and Down. Refer to the dictionary for any help.

Read and Respond.

Task 1: I Read the lesson carefully and represent the events/incidents in the flow chart You may have as many boxes in between as you think appropriate.

e. g.: Some verbs are underlined in the passage given below. See how they are classified into finite and nonfinite verbs.

They were (1) waiting (2) for the bus. After a long time, it came (3). The bus was (4) heavily crowded (5). Anyway, they managed (6) to push (7) through and they squeezed (8) themselves in. They felt (9) tired (10) as they had (11) been (12) waiting (13) for long. I wonder (14) who can (15) ever improve (16) our transport system.

Task 1: Read the paragraph and classify the underlined verbs into Finite verbs and Non-finite verbs. Write the tense of the finite verbs and the type of nonfinite verbs. Two examples are given.

Smita bit her lip in self-reproach. She had been so excited at seeing the announcement that she had not remembered that her brother was very ill. She had seen how the doctors had shaken their heads gravely and spoken words that neither she nor even her parents could understand. But somewhere deep inside, Smita had known the frightening truth that Anant was going to die. The word cancer had hung in the air. Her brother was dying of cancer even though she pretended that all would be well and they would return together, a small family of four, to their home in Gaganpur. And he was only fifteen, and the best table-tennis player in the school and the fastest runner. He was learning to play the sitar; they were both taking sitar lessons, but Anant was better than her as in many other things. He was already able to compose his own tunes to the astonishment of their guru. Then cancer had struck and they had come to Bombay so that he could be treated at the cancer hospital in the city.

Task 2: Self – assessment

Practice Writing

Task 1, 2,3 Self-assessment.

MR 1 Decode the following SMS into the sentences: (one has been done for you)

Question 1.

“Try it jst Is again,’he wudsA.

Answer:

Sentence: ‘Try it just once again he would say

Question 2.

Yday, i rot leaVletta 2 hm

Answer:

Sentence: Yesterday I wrote a leave letter to him.

Question 3.

My sis gt 8T% n mats n 2nd test.

Answer:

Sentence: My sister got 80% in Mathematics in the Second test.

Question 4.

Bravo India Id Match.

Answer:

Sentence: Bravo India won the Match.

Question 5.

W'rgunA excussion on satdy 2 historical places.

Answer:

Sentence: We are going on an excursion on Saturday to historical places.

Question 6.

Im ill, i cnot attend today's skool so plz givyr notes in devng.

Answer:

Sentence: I am ill, I cannot attend today's school. So please give your notes in the evening.

Question 7.

do d hmwrk quickly n zzzwel. Gudn8.

Answer:

Sentence: Do the homework quickly and sleep well. Good night.

The Concert Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Question 1.

'TheConcert' was the lesson written by

- a) Shanta Rameshwar Rao**
- b) Shantha Kameshwar Rao**

c) Shantha

d) Shantha Pandit

Answer:

a) Shanta Rameshwar Rao

Question 2.

The Concert will be held at

a) Anand Auditorium

b) Bombay

c) Shanmukaananda Auditorium

d) Stadium

Answer:

c) Shanmukaananda Auditorium

Question 3.

Pandit Ravishankar was ___

a) Singer

b) Musician

c) Playback singer

d) Sitar Maestro

Answer:

d) Sitar Maestro

Question 4.

Anant was Smita's ___

a) father

b) friend

c) brother

d) neighbor

Answer:

c) brother

Question 5.

Smita was __ years old.

- a) 15
- b) 16
- c) 18
- d) 12

Answer:

- b) 16

Question 6.

Their family lived in ____

- a) Bombay
- b) Bangalore
- c) Gaganpur
- d) Mumbai

Answer:

- c) Gaganpur

Question 7.

Anant was best __ player.

- a) table-tennis
- b) cricket
- c) kho-kho
- d) Hockey

Answer:

- a) table-tennis

Question 8.

In his school, Anant was the ____

- a) runner
- b) fastest runner

c) bowler

d) batsman

Answer:

b) fastest runner

Question 9.

Anant was suffering from ___

a) fever

b) asthma

c) cancer

d) breathing problem

Answer:

c) cancer

Question 10.

Anant was already able to ___ his own tunes.

a) construct

b) sing

c) write

d) compose.

Answer:

d) compose.

Question 11.

They stayed in Bombay at ___

a) aunt Sushila's apartment

b) Hotel

c) Guesthouse

d) their home

Answer:

a) aunt Sushila's apartment

Question 12.

Who gave suggestions to Smita to walk in the park?

- a) Anant
- b) her mother
- c) Aunt Sushila
- d) her friend

Answer:

- c) Aunt Sushila

Question 13.

Who brought tickets for the concert?

- a) Aunt Sushila
- b) her father
- c) brother
- d) friend

Answer:

- b) her father

Question 14.

A large __ made a long boring speech.

- a) Pandit
- b) Ustad
- c) Manager
- d) mustached man

Answer:

- d) mustached man

Question 15.

The tabla player in the concert was

- a) Ustad Allah Rakha
- b) Sadashiva

c) Shivakumar

d) Someshwara

Answer:

a) Ustad Allah Rakha

II. Match the following :

Answer:

1 – f

2 – e

3 – a

4 – c

5 – b

6 -d

III. Give one word for the following:

Question 1.

Feeling or showing happiness and enthusiasm.

Answer:

excited.

Question 2.

a great performer, especially a musician

Answer:

maestro

Question 3.

moved quickly and suddenly towards a particular place.

Answer:

sprang.

Question 4.

Without being asked, invited or expected

Answer:

unbidden

Question 5.

blame or criticism against oneself/herself

Answer:

self-reproach

Question 6.

to behave in a particular way in order to make other people believe something that is not true.

Answer:

pretend

Question 7.

an act or event that does not follow the laws of nature and is believed to be caused by God.

Answer:

miracle

Question 8.

a feeling of great pleasure.

Answer:

enchantment

Question 9.

enthusiastic clapping by an audience who stand up from their seats as a sign of their appreciation.

Answer:

ovation

Question 10.

to twist and turn the body or part of it with quick short movements.

Answer:

wriggle

Question 11.

a person who is especially good at some art or achievement.

Answer:

wizard

Question 12.

a tall building that has flats.

Answer:

block

Answer the following questions in a word or a sentence each:

Question 1.

Where was Pandit Ravi Shankar's concert going to be held?

Answer:

At the Shanmukhananda Auditorium in Bombay.

Question 2.

What was the name of Anant's sister?

Answer:

Smita.

Question 3.

Anant was a resident of which place?

Answer:

Gaganpur.

Question 4.

Where did Anant and his family stay whenever they came to Bombay?

Answer:

At aunt Sushila's apartment.

Question 5.

Why did the doctors recommend that Anant be taken home?

Answer:

The doctors knew that there was no hope of recovery and so they asked his family to take Anant home.

Question 6.

What did Anant consider 'the chance of a lifetime'?

Answer:

According to Anant, the opportunity to listen to Pandit Ravi Shankar live was the chance of a lifetime.

Question 7.

Why did aunt Sushila suggest a walk in the park to Smita?

Answer:

Smita was feeling bad that her brother was too sick to attend the concert; so her aunt suggested that she take a walk in the park to feel better.

Question 8.

What did Smita hear in every beat of the tabla?

Answer:

Smita heard Anant's voice saying 'the chance of a lifetime' in every beat of the tabla.

Question 9.

What request did Smita make to Pandit Ravi Shankar?

Answer:

Smita requested Pandit Ravi Shankar to perform for her brother who had been diagnosed with cancer.

Question 10.

Which instrument did Ustad Allah Rakha play?

Answer:

The tabla.

Question 11.

Why did Smita approach Pandit Ravishankar?

Answer:

Smita approached Pandit Ravishankar to request him to perform for her brother, an ardent fan of his, who had been diagnosed with cancer and was unable to move out of the house.

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

Where did Anant's family stay in Bombay?

Answer:

Anant's family stayed with Aunt Sushila. Though her apartment was not big, she always welcomed them.

Question 2.

Anant was a brilliant boy. Give examples to prove this.

OR

Anant was a talented boy. Justify the statement.

Answer:

Though he was only fifteen, Anant was the best table tennis player and the fastest runner in the school. He was learning to play the sitar and he was already able to compose his own tunes to the astonishment of his guru.

Question 3.

In what way was the truth frightening to Smita?

Answer:

Though Smita and her family had pretended Anant would get well, she had known that Anant was going to die of cancer. This was frightening to Smita.

Question 4.

Aunt Sushila was a generous lady. How would you justify this statement?

Answer:

Whenever Smita's family came to Bombay for Anant's treatment, they stayed in aunt Sushila's house. Her apartment was small but there was always room for them. By this, we can say that aunt Sushila was a generous lady.

Question 5.

How did Smita enjoy the concert?

Answer:

Smita was spellbound by the music. As the first notes came over the air, she felt as if the gates of enchantment and wonder were opening. She was spellbound listening to the unfolding ragas, the slow plaintive notes and the fast twinkling ones.

Question 6.

How did Smita feel when she attended the music concert?

Answer:

Though Smita was enchanted by the heavenly music of Pandit Ravi Shankar, she was preoccupied. She was constantly thinking of her brother's wish to hear the music of Pandit Ravi Shankar and wondering whether she would be able to convince the musician to play exclusively for the boy.

Question 7.

Why do you think the mother cautioned the girl?

Answer:

The mother was worried about her ailing son and she did not want him to be disturbed in any way. She didn't want him to be disturbed especially when he was asleep. She also knew that the news about Pandit Ravi Shankar would unnecessarily excite him and tempt him.

Question 8.

What was the daring thought that came to Smita?

Answer:

The thought that came to Smita was indeed daring. She was planning to request the renowned musician to play exclusively for her brother by paying a visit to the place where they stayed. It was something that others wouldn't even have dreamt of.

Question 9.

How did Smita fulfil her brother's wish?

Answer:

Smita attended the programme of Pandit Ravi Shankar with her father, not so much for her sake, but for the sake of her brother. At the end of the programme she approached Pandit Ravi Shankar and explained to him her brother's condition of being very close to death and requested him to play for him. Pandit Ravi Shankar and his tabla artiste Ustad Allah Rakha decided to play for the boy the next morning and they kept their promise.

Question 10.

What admirable qualities do you find in Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha?

Answer:

Both Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha were renowned names in the field of music. Yet they were the very epitome of humility and humanity. First of all, they gave a patient hearing to Smita though they too must have been tired after the concert. Secondly, they went to the apartment of the dying boy to offer a home concert and fulfil his desire of listening to Pandit Ravi Shankar. Thus we find compassion in the hearts of Pandit and Ustad.

Answer the following questions in 5-6 / 8-10 sentences each:

Question 1.

What light does the story throw on human relationships?

Answer:

Despite the fact that the story is a sad one, the close bond among the family members . and the concern of the musicians for the boy stand as a testimony to the beauty of human relationships. We see the love of the family members for Anant. They relocate to Bombay with the hope of getting Anant cured. We see the love of the sister who resolves daringly to fulfil the wish of her brother. We see aunt Sushila being so warm towards the family and always welcoming them into her house. Finally we see the musicians doing so much for the little boy who is a total stranger to them without expecting anything in return. All these instances show the beauty of human relationships.

Question 2.

‘Where there is a will, there is a way. How is this saying apt for Smita?’

Answer:

Smita’s determination to fulfill the desire of her ailing brother is an example to show that where there is a will, there is a way. On knowing her brother’s desire to attend Pandit Ravi Shankar’s recital, Smita decided to do something that others wouldn’t even have dreamt of. She decided to convince Pandit Ravi Shankar to play exclusively for the dying boy. She managed to approach Pandit Ravi Shankar and explained the situation to him. Pandit Ravi Shankar, like a true gentleman, agreed to do what was requested of him and brought immense peace and happiness to the dying boy. Thus we see that the power of conviction, the power of persuasion and the power of love can make the impossible possible.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

‘It’s the chance of a lifetime.’

- a) Who makes this statement? OR Who does ‘he’ refer to?
- b) What was the chance of a lifetime?
- c) Was the speaker able to grab this chance of a lifetime? Why?
- d) Why was he feeling so?

Answer:

- a) Anant.
- b) Pandit Ravi Shankar was performing live. To see and hear him was the chance of a lifetime.
- c) No. Anant, was suffering from cancer. He was no longer in the condition to even get up from bed let alone attend the recital.
- d) He was excited to see and hear Pandit Ravishankar, a sitar maestro, as he was also learning sitar.

Question 2.

“You’ll wake him up. You know he needs all the sleep and rest he can get”.

- a) Who was sleeping?
- b) Why does he need rest?
- c) Who does 'you' refer to?

Answer:

- a) Anant.
- b) Anant was suffering from cancer and had become very weak. So he needed rest.
- c) Smita.

Question 3.

"Panditji is a busy man. You must not bother him with such requests"

- a) Who made this statement?
- b) Who is the 'you' referred to?
- c) What was the request?

Answer:

- a) A large mustachioed man.
- b) Smita.
- c) Anant had been diagnosed with cancer and was unable to move out of the house. So she approached Pandit Ravi Shankar to request him to come to their house and play for Anant.

Question 4.

"No, how can I? We've always done things together".

- a) Who is the 'P' in the extract?
- b) Who has done things together?
- c) Why is it not possible now?

Answer:

- a) Smita.
- b) Anant and Smita.
- c) It is not possible now because Anant had cancer and was confined to bed. He could not go anywhere with Smita.

Question 5.

They could not believe their eyes. "It is not possible" they said.

- a) Who is referred to as ‘they’?
- b) What was not possible for them to believe?
- c) Why did they feel so?

Answer:

- a) The neighbours of aunt Sushila.
- b) That Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha visited aunt Sushila’s house.
- c) Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha were world-class musicians and busy people. Hence they were surprised when they came to play for Anant.

THE CONCERT SUMMARY IN ENGLISH

The concert was a lesson written by Shanta Rameshwar Rao. This lesson comes under the Unit “Music the Ambrosia”. Everyone likes Music. Music is a divine art. is Will’? Music changes the life of man. Music is a powerful media. Here the poetess narrates an incident, which is very much touching. Smita was a sixteen years old girl while reading the newspaper, and said excitedly that Pandit Ravishankar’s Concert will be held at Shanmukhananda Auditorium the next day. Smita, her mother and her brother Anant who was suffering from cancer came to Bombay for treatment. They stayed in Bombay for treatment. They stayed in Aunt Sushila’s Apartment in Bombay.

When she told the mother loudly, her mother said to her, Don’t shout, your brother will wake up. Don’t you know he needs to sleep and take rest? But the boy was not sleeping, he was fond of music and wanted to learn sitar, both brother and sister joined the sitar class. When he heard the name Pandit Ravi Shankar, he was eager to know the details so he tried to raise himself upon His elbows, but he couldn’t, he fell back. His eyes though she pretended that all would be well and their family members were only four. Her brother Anant was fifteen years old, the best table-tennis player in the school and the fastest runner. He was learning to play the sitar and better than his sister Smita as in many other things.

He was quite intelligent and skillful. He was already able to compose his own tunes. Then cancer struck and they came to Bombay with great hopes. Whenever they came to Bombay, they stayed with Aunt Sushila. They had belief and told themselves that Anant would be cured and he would again walk and run and take part in the forthcoming table- tennis tournament. He would play sitar and perhaps would be a great sitarist. But their bad luck his condition grew worse day by day and the doctor said. “Take him home, give him what he likes, satisfy him, because his end is not so far”. As a parent, they hide the truth. They laughed and smiled and talked Anant with whatever made him happy.

They fulfilled his every need and gave whatever he asked for. Now he was asking to go to the concert. For him it was shining, he said that he must 1 miss the chance. He was very eager to hear him and see him. Mother came and said to him “lie down son, lie down ”, she was helpless, seeing her son s condition, she felt very sad and uttered a prayer. Anant repeated I must hear him and see him, Its the chance of a lifetime. Immediately he began to cough and catch a breath with open mouth and had to be given oxygen from the cylinder. But his large eyes were fixed on his sister. Smita felt very guilty when she read the news, she had been so excited that she completely forget the condition of her

brother. She had known the frightening truth that he was going to die. He was suffering from cancer and doctors gave no hope.

Even they came to Bombay with great hopes. Whenever they came to Bombay, they stayed with Aunt Sushila. They had belief and told themselves that Anant would be cured and he would again walk and run and take part in the forthcoming table- tennis tournament. He would play the sitar and perhaps would be a great sitarist. But their bad luck his condition grew worse day by day and the doctor said. "Take him home, give him what he likes, satisfy him, because his end is not so far". As a parent, they hide the truth. They laughed and smiled and talked Anant with whatever made him happy. They fulfilled his every need and gave whatever he asked for. Now he was asking to go to the concert. For him, it was a rare opportunity and the chance of a lifetime.

Mother consoled his son and said, "this is not the last time they are going to play, when you are better then we will go". Smita stood at the window, her eyes filled with tears. Seeing this, the mother whispered to Smita that she can go with her' father. Smita went to Aunt Sushila and expressed her sorrow and how she can go without her brother. The aunt suggested her to walk in the park some time. Smita was grateful. to her suggestion. While walking in the park a daring thought came to her mind and she hurried home. She decided that there is no harm in trying it. The plan was ready in her mind. She asked her mother and her father agreed to get the tickets. When the next day Smita and her father left the home Anant smiled and wished them to enjoy the concert. Smita listened to the concert, she was so much excited and felt that was all in a dream. She listened to the unfolding ragas but all the while she remembered her plan. She heard the chance of a lifetime" in Anant's voice in every beat of the tabla. The concert came to an end and a man-made a long boring speech. People began to move towards the exit.

Now was the time, Smita went towards the stage. Pandit Ravishankar and Ustad Allah Rakha were standing. Smita s heart was beating loudly, her knees felt weak, her tongue became dry, but she went up and standing before them with her hands folded. She called 'Oh, sir '. Both of them saw Smita and asked yes? She narrated the condition of her brother and he is longing to wish to see them. At that moment the man who made long boring speech came and said to Smita that Panditji is a busy man, you must not trouble him with these requests. Blearing this Pandit Ravishankar smiled and mentioned him to be quiet. He asked ustad Sahib. Without any thought, Ustad said that tomorrow morning we perform for the boy. Paditji said yes and also agreed. It was very exciting for Smita. Smita came back home and said to everybody especially for Anant. And the next morning both Pandit Ravishankar and Ustad Allah Rakha came to their home. They performed in front of Anant who was lying on the bed. Anant was listening to music. The great and beautiful happiness as life went out of him gently, very gently.

JAZZ POEM TWO.

Jazz Poem Two Poem Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

Whether you want to become an expert in English or to get good marks in the exam, you have one and only solution is practicing with Karnataka Class 10 English Chapter wise Solutions. Strengthen your weakness by learning the KSEEB Class 10 English on our site. You can learn directly online on our website or learn off line by downloading Karnataka Class 10 English Chapter wise material. Save your time and read Karnataka Class 10 English Subject at your comfort level.

Understand The Poem

Jazz Poem Two Summary KSEEB Class 10 Question 1.

Read the first stanza and see how closely the description of the Jazz – the player is made and filled in the columns in the table.

Answer:

1.Face Wrinkled old face, full of worries, rough unshaven face
2.Eyes Closed Eyes, Still down eyes
3.Ears Still closed ears
4.Shirt faded-blue old shirt, turn dark with sweat
5.Collar Frayed Collar
6.Jacket Worn out, old Jacket
7.Shoes run-down shoes had paper in them

Jazz Poem Two Questions And Answers KSEEB Class 10 Question 2.

Why do you think the Jazz player keeps his head down? [Line 1-6]

Answer:

Jazz player was very old and he had no interest in life. He was alone and had pain in his heart. So he kept his head down.

Jazz Poem Two Summary In English KSEEB Class 10 Question 3.

The word 'old' has been repeated several times in the first two stanzas. What does this suggest?

Answer:

The word old suggests belonging to the past. Jazz player was aged and the things are worn out or outdated.

Jazz Poem Two Short Summary In English KSEEB Class 10 Question 4.

What description do the lines from 13 to 18 suggest about the jazz, player?

Answer:

Jazz player had lost his interest in the Jazz player had lost his interest in life. He didn't care to wear the tom dress. He had more pain that could be seen in each wrinkle of his face. He was alone.

Summary Of The Poem Jazz Poem Two In English KSEEB Class 10 Question 5.

- Read the lines from 19 to 25 carefully. Is there any change in the stature of the Jazz player?
- Now read the lines from 31 to 35. Can you guess what he is meditating on?

Answer:

- Yes, we found some changes in Jazz player. He put his still down and eyes still closed but ears brighter up. He was started to play some religious musical notes in a low voice.
- He was meditating that he wanted to tell that he was a Black Man to all the world..

Summary Of The Poem Jazz Poem Two KSEEB Class 10 Question 6.

How has he held his instrument?

Answer:

His instrument saxophone was hung from his neck by a wire coat hanger.

10th English Jazz Poem Two Notes KSEEB Question 7.

Read the lines from 29 to 41. It gives a picture. Can you imagine that? Try to get that picture in your mind. If you can, draw the picture.

Answer:

Lines 29-41 create the picture of the man playing his instrument. The minute he puts his musical instrument to his mouth, he undergoes a transformation. As he preaches his Black Gospel of Jazz through his music, he changes from being a black man to a bird, soaring high in the sky. This transformation is symbolic of the liberating spirit of music. It also shows that music has no divisive boundaries.

Jazz Poem Two Summary Writing KSEEB Class 10 Question 8.

'Preaching it with words' (line 35). What does 'it' stand for here?

Answer:

'it' stands for the Black Gospel of Jazz.

Jazz Poem Summary In English KSEEB Class 10 Question 9.

'He is no longer a man', says the poet (line 37). Who else is he supposed to be if he is no longer man?

Answer:

The poet said that if he is no longer a man, he became a bird.

10th Class English Jazz Poem Two Summary KSEEB Question 10.

Read the last ten words of the poem. You may observe a change in the tone. What is that about?

Answer:

The tone in the last ten words is of despondence (loss of hope). The speaker says that the Jazz player, who transformed himself into a bird with the power of music, may once again relapse into his pathetic condition of being an old black man with a wrinkled face and worn-out clothing.

Read and appreciate

Question 1 & 2 Self-assessment

Jazz Poem Two Summary 10th Class KSEEB Question 3.

The poem is full of images [word pic-tures]. Some examples are given. Now find as many images as you can in the poem.

Answer:

- a) Wrinkled old face.
- b) Sagging stomach
- c) rough down head
- d) still down head
- e) still closed eyes
- g) an old alto saxophone lies across his chest.

Jazz Poem Two Summary In Kannada KSEEB Class 10 Question 4.

Is there a simile in the poem? If so identify it.

Answer:

Yes, in the very first stanza, a simile is employed. The poem begins with the lines, “there he stands, see? like a black Ancient Mariner.” The comparison is between the Black Jazz musician and the Ancient Mariner in Coleridge’s poem. Like the Ancient Mariner, the old jazz musician feels that he has a message for the people of the world.

Jazz Poem Two Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

10th English Jazz Poem Two Summary KSEEB Question 1.

Jazz Poem Two belongs to the unit

- a) Music the Ambrosia
- b) Music
- c) Science
- d) Happiness

Answer:

- a) Music the Ambrosia

10th Jazz Poem Two Notes KSEEB Question 2.

Jazz Poem Two is written by

- a) Coleridge
- b) Carl Wendall Hines, Jr
- c) Shakespeare

d) Margaret

Answer:

b) Carl Wendall Hines, Jr

Jazz Poem Two Summary 10th KSEEB Question 3.

He stands like a black

a) man

b) Satute

c) Ancient Mariner

d) Person

Answer:

c) Ancient Mariner

10th Jazz Poem Two Summary KSEEB Question 4.

His ___ old face

a) Shaved

b) Wrinkled

c) handsome

d) ugly

Answer:

b) Wrinkled

Jazz Poem Two Summary In English Pdf KSEEB Class 10 Question 5.

The old face so full of the ___ of living

a) wag

b) sag

c) worries

d) faded

Answer:

c) worries

10th Standard Jazz Poem Two Summary In English KSEEB Question 6.

He is turned downward with ___ eyes.

- a) opened
- b) dreaming
- c) shining
- d) closed

Answer:

- d) closed

10th English Jazz Poem Summary KSEEB Question 7.

His frayed-collar faded __ old shirt

- a) green
- b) bhie
- c) yellow
- d) white

Answer:

- b) bhie

Jazz Poem Two Question Answer KSEEB Class 10 Question 8.

The old shirt turn dark with sweat and the old ____

- a) necktie
- b) collar
- c) pocket
- d) sleeves

Answer:

- a) necktie

Question 9.

The undone drops loosely about the worn ____?

- a) old shirt
- b) old collar
- c) old Jacket

d) old coat

Answer:

c) old Jacket

Question 10.

Just barely holding his __ stomach in.

a) large

b) small

c) empty

d) sagging

Answer:

d) sagging

Question 11.

His run-down shoes have __ in them

a) leather

b) soles

c) paper

d) rubber

Answer:

c) paper

Question 12.

His rough unshaven face shows __

a) happiness

b) sadness

c) solitude

d) pain

Answer:

d) pain

Question 13.

He stands in __ solitude head

- a) Self
- b) Self-brought
- c) big
- d) round

Answer:

- b) Self-brought

Question 14.

Across his chest lies an old ____.

- a) alto saxophone
- b) Jacket
- c) faded shirt
- d) necktie

Answer:

- a) alto saxophone

Question 15.

Alto Saxophone supported from his neck by a wire ____

- a) thread
- b) hanger
- c) coat hanger
- d) strip

Answer:

- c) coat hanger

Question 16.

To tell all the world that he is a ____

- a) Musician
- b) Traveler
- c) Mariner

d) Black man

Answer:

d) Black man

Question 17.

He was sent here to ____

a) sing

b) preach

c) travel

d) do magic

Answer:

b) preach

Question 18.

He came here to preach the Black ____ of Jazz.

a) Gospel

b) Magic

c) Music

d) Religion

Answer:

a) Gospel

Question 19.

Now preaching it with words of ____notes & chords.

a) music

b) screaming

c) loud

d) melodious

Answer:

b) screaming

Question 20.

He is no longer a man, no not even a ____.

- a) Religious man
- b) Black man
- c) Mariner
- d) Stout man

Answer:

- b) Black man

Question 21.

He was turned into not even a Black man but ____

- a) an animal
- b) Religious man
- c) Magic man
- d) a bird

Answer:

- d) a bird

Question 22.

One that gathers his wings and flies ____

- a) into the sky
- b) down
- c) high
- d) away

Answer:

- c) high

II. Match the following :

Answer:

1 – e

2 – f

3 – a

4 – b

5 – c

6 – d

III. Give phrases or one word for the following :

Question 1.

no longer interested in or enthusiastic about anything in life.

Answer:

wearies of living

Question 2.

threads in a piece of cloth starting to come apart.

Answer:

Fray

Question 3.

The state of being alone.

Answer:

Solitude

Question 4.

a type of religious music in which religious songs are sung very loudly.

Answer:

Gospel

Question 5.

Loud musical sounds.

Answer:

Screaming notes.

Answer the following questions in a word or a sentence each:

Question 1.

What is the ancient mariner?

Answer:

'The Ancient Mariner' is a very famous poem by Samuel Taylor Coleridge in which a seaman shoots an albatross, a bird of good omen, and suffers supernatural punishment.

Question 2.

Why is the musician weary?

Answer:

The musician is weary because of all the experiences that life has put him through.

Question 3.

Why is the musician's shirt turning dark?

Answer:

The musician's shirt is turning dark because of his sweat.

Question 4.

Why are the shoes of the musician in bad shape?

Answer:

The musician cannot afford new shoes or even repair them, so his shoes are in a very bad condition.

Question 5.

Why is there pain in each wrinkle on the musician's face?

Answer:

The musician is a poor, black man, who has experienced many hardships in life and therefore there is pain in each of his wrinkles.

Question 6.

Which musical instrument does the jazz player play?

Answer:

The alto saxophone.

Question 7.

What is supported by the musician's neck?

Answer:

His instrument, the alto saxophone, is supported by the musician's neck.

Question 8.

Why are the musician's lips parted?

Answer:

The musician's lips are parted because he is about to begin playing his instrument.

Question 9.

Why are the words and musical notes described as 'screaming'?

Answer:

The words and musical notes are described as 'screaming' because they are loud and full of passion and harmony.

Question 10.

Why did he stop being a man?

Answer:

The musician stops being a man because, when he starts playing, he is transformed into a bird.

Question 11.

How does the musician find himself a black man again?

Answer:

After he transforms into a bird and flies away, he discovers himself afresh as a black man again.

Question 12.

How could the musician go away from the earth?

Answer:

With the power of music. Music had transformed him into a bird.

Question 13.

What does the Jazz player look like the moment he plays the saxophone?

Answer:

The moment the Jazz player plays the saxophone, he turns into a bird with wings.

Question 14.

What is the Jazz player supposed to be when he plays music?

Answer:

The Jazz player is supposed to be a bird when he plays music.

Question 15.

The old Jazz musician's shirt was dark due to

Answer:

sweat.

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

Comment on the phrase, 'full of wearies of living.'

Answer:

The poet heightens the long, tiring life of the jazz musician by employing the expression 'wearies of living'. Wearies refers to fatigue and other tiring acts highlighting the drudgery of life.

Question 2.

Give at least two descriptions of the Jazz player to show that he is sad while not playing the instrument.

Answer:

The Jazz player keeps his head down bogged by life's wearies. He has experienced many hardships in life and therefore his rough unshaven face shows pain in each wrinkle.

Question 3.

'He is no longer a man', says the poet in the poem 'Jazz Poem Two'. What does the poet mean by this?

Answer:

The poet conveys the idea that an artist can transcend his physical being and free his spirit from the confinement of the flesh. When he plays jazz, he is a free-soaring spirit like a bird. , The poet wants to highlight the liberating spirit of music.

Question 4.

Why do you think the word 'old' has been repeated several times in the first two stanzas?

Answer:

The poet wants to convey the idea that the Jazz player is old in every sense. He is advanced in his age, his clothes are old and his spirit is dull. This aspect that is emphasized in the beginning is a total contrast in the concluding part of the poem wherein the Jazz musician soars like a bird.

Question 5.

Why does the Jazz player keep his head down? When does he feel like a bird?

Answer:

The Jazz player keeps his head down bogged by life's wearies. He has experienced many hardships in life and therefore his rough, unshaven face shows pain in each wrinkle. He feels like a bird when he produces jazz music from his saxophone.

Answer the following questions in 6-8 sentences each:

Question 1.

The poet uses the word 'see' twice. What is his intention in doing this?

Answer:

The poet uses the word 'see' once at the beginning while he introduces the Jazz musician to the readers, and once again when the Jazz musician lifts the musical instrument to his lips. The poet's intention is to draw the attention of the reader to the transformation that is going to take place in the musician once he starts playing the instrument. It is as if the poet is urging the readers to take note of the magical power of music. The poet wants the readers to take note of the transformation completely, moment by moment.

Question 2.

What do you think is meant by the Black Gospel of Jazz?

Answer:

The traditional black gospel is music that is written to express either personal or a communal belief regarding Christian life. It is a form of Christian music and a subgenre of gospel music. The origins of gospel music are during American slavery when enslaved Africans were introduced to the Christian religion and converted in large numbers.

In the 1930s gospel music of the civil rights movement was referred to as the black gospel period because this was the most prosperous era for gospel music. The message of many of the civil rights activists was supported by the message gospel music was putting forth. Hence the poet talks about the Black Gospel of Jazz. On the whole, we can see that the message the musician has to share is from the black perspective.

Question 5.

How does the poet discriminate against the Jazz player's appearance with his artistic character?

Answer:

The poet describes the old Jazz player and how he is transformed when he plays the music he loves. The Jazz player has a rough unshaven face and sagging stomach. He wears a faded blue shirt, a loose necktie, and an old jacket. His shoes are run down. Across his chest is an old alto saxophone supported from his neck by a wire coat hanger. He keeps his head down bogged by life's wearies. He has experienced many hardships in life and therefore his rough, unshaven face shows pain in each wrinkle. The player, who looks old, defeated and dejected, has a complete transformation in the end when he starts playing jazz music. He is now a messenger of God, soaring higher and higher like a free bird. The poverty-filled life of the Jazz player cannot bring down his spirits on the music. On the contrary, the music liberates him from his miseries, though temporarily.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

His rough unshaven face shows pain in each wrinkle.

- a) Whose face is referred to?
- b) Why is there pain in each wrinkle on the musician's face?
- c) How does the pain in each wrinkle of the musician's face help him?

Answer:

- a) The jazz players.
- b) The musician is a poor, black man. He has experienced many hardships in life and therefore there is a pain in each of his wrinkles.
- c) The pain helps him to play good music, and it fills his music with a passion.

Question 2.

"his run-down shoes have paper in them and his rough unshaven face shows pain in each wrinkle".

- a) Why do the shoes have paper in them?
- b) Why is there pain in each wrinkle on the musician's face?
- c) What does the description of the face suggest?

Answer:

- a) The Jazz player is a poor man. His shoes are old and torn and he has put paper in them to be able to wear them.
- b) The musician is a poor, black man. He has experienced many hardships in life and therefore there is pain in each of his wrinkles.
- c) The Jazz player's face is unshaven which suggests that he does not care for his appearance. He has led a hard life, so his face is wrinkled.

Question 3.

"he is no longer a man, no not even a Black Man, hut (yeah!) a Bird"

- a) Who is the man referred to here?
- b) When is he no longer a man?
- c) What do these lines suggest?

Answer:

- a) The jazz player.

b) When he plays jazz music.

c) These lines suggest that music can transform a man from the slavish condition to the free, masterly position. The transformation is symbolic of the liberating spirit of music.

JAZZ POEM TWO POEM SUMMARY IN ENGLISH

Carl Wendall Hines Jr. wrote Jazz poem 1 & 2. For students reference Jazz poem 1 is given under. 'Yeah, here I am, standing at the crest of the tallest with a trumpet in my hand and dark glasses on. Bearded & bereted I proudly stand! But there are no eyes to see me. I send down cool sounds! But there are no ears to hear me. My lips they quiver in aether-emptiness! There are no hearts love who me. Surely though through nights grey fog mist of delusion and dream and the rivers of tears that flow like gelatin Soul-Juice some apathetic bearer of paranoid-ic peyote vision (or some other source of, inspiration) shall hear the song I play.

Shall see the beard and beret, shall become inflamed beyond all hope with emotion s everlasting fire and join me in eternal peace. And but yet well who knows ?' The old Jazz musician was also similar to that of Ancient Mariner in Coleridge s poem. He had no interest or enthusiasm in the present world. He had a pathetic figure, but commanding artist. He had the power to make people listen. This was a gift. He was silent speech but eloquent in music. He was very good at expressing his thoughts through music.

He stood at the crest of the tallest hill. He was old and had a wrinkled face. He had no interest in life. His head was turned downward, he closed his eyes. He wore an old faded blue shirt. That shirt was dark with sweat, the tie was torn. The jacket was old and it could not hold his sagging (hanging) stomach. He wore the old shoes which had papers inside. His face was not shaved. One could see the pain in each wrinkle of his face.

He alone stood with his head down and eyes closed. He wore an old alto saxophone and chanting some religious music in low voice. That old saxophone was hanging from his neck by a wire coat hanger. He wanted to tell that he was a Black Man. He had been sent here to preach the Black Gospel of Jazz. He was preaching it with words by loud musical sound. When he started to preach, he was transformed into a Bird. That Bird gathers its wings and flies high, high and higher until it flies away. Otherwise, he comes back to find himself as a Black man again.

THE DISCOVERY

The Discovery Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

The Discovery Lesson Notes Question 1.

Some physical features of Columbus are described/ given in the text. Based on your reading complete the table.

Answer:

Physical Features of Columbus

PhysiqueAgeHairComplexionFaceTall and well built46Prematurely whitefair almost ruddyin repose, is melancholic

The Discovery 10th English Lesson Notes Question 2.

Usually, we sing songs to express our joys and sorrows. Here the play begins with a song. What mood does this convey?

Answer:

The play begins with a song. The song was sung by Seamen. The song conveys the dis-satisfied and discontented mood.

10th English The Discovery Notes Question 3.

‘There are limits to patients’, says Diego. What does this suggest about Diego’s state of mind?

Answer:

Diego had lost his hopes. He was not happy with his captain’s decision. He thought that going to discover the new land was a waste of time. So he had impatience. Whenever Pedro asked him, he said the above words that show his angry mood.

The Discovery Lesson Question Answers Question 4.

Who do you think has the lives of fifty in his hands? How?

Answer:

Columbus had the lives of fifty in his hands, He was the captain of the ship. After many days of their voyage, it didn’t give success. All are home-sick and wanted to go back home. But the captain did not agree for this. So all had thought their lives were in his hand.

Share your Responses :

The Discovery Question And Answer Question 1.

“A good sailor knows his place,” Says Columbus to Diego. The statement is

(Choose the right answer from the options and complete the sentence).

- a) a piece of advice**
- b) an indirect command**
- c) a statement**

Answer:

The statement is an indirect command.

The Discovery Lesson Summary Question 2.

Which reaction of Diego to the sentence above justifies your choice? Quote the phrase indicating his reaction.

Answer:

By hearing the above statement Diego with repressed firry said yes sir. The phrase is scarcely concealing a scowl, goes off the above reaction of Diego states that it was an indirect command.

The Discovery Summary Question 3.

How does Pedro try to defend the drunken, seamen? Was he right in defending them?

Answer:

Pedro defends the drunken seamen by saying that they are simple men without the vision of Columbus, and they need relaxation. Pedro is right because the seamen follow the orders of Columbus without sharing his passion. Often they are likely to get frustrated with the feeling that their voyage is a purposeless one and they are risking their lives for nothing. At times like this, they need to drink to get over their frustration.

The Discovery Lesson Extracts Question 4.

What is termed as his worst enemy by Columbus?

Answer:

Columbus felt sorry because he had a short (quick) temper and an uncontrolled tongue. His worst enemy was his uncontrolled tongue.

KSEEB Solutions English Class 10 Question 5.

The dialogue between Columbus and Pedro in section 2 reveals this trait of Columbus – (Choose the most appropriate response).

- a. dictatorial attitude**
- b. quick temper**
- c. hatred towards the seamen**
- d. selfishness**

Answer:

the quick temper of Columbus.

KSEEB Solutions For Class 10 English Notes Question 6.

“Columbus is always furious when he hears the song ‘Here’s a keg o’ rum, “What makes him react so?

Answer:

Being a Captain, Columbus had a great responsibility. By nature, he had a strong will. He was not ready to give up his task. But the Seamen are very simple and ordinary persons and they were

homesick. The discontented seamen are sung the song to criticize his captain. So whenever he heard the song he became furious because of this reason.

Share your Responses:

The Discovery 10th Lesson Extracts Question 1.

This section reveals the behavior of ____ (Fill in the blank).

Answer:

This section reveals the behavior of Pepe.

The Discovery Class 10 English Notes Question 2.

Why do you think Pepe prefers to be in the company of Columbus?

Answer:

Pepe was a young boy. He had great respect for Columbus. Pepe was an obedient, loyal and devoted servant of Columbus. The Seamen were against Columbus. So Pepe likes or prefers to be in the company of his beloved captain than any other.

The Discovery By Herman Ould Summary Question 3.

Pepe is always eager to say that he is ever..... to Columbus. (Fill in the blank).

Answer:

Pepe is always eager to say that he is ever believed in Columbus.

KSEEB Solutions 10th English Question 4.

Pepe warns Columbus about some people. Who are they?

Answer:

Pepe warns Columbus about Seamen, the Seamen were discontented, and sometimes they were desperate.

Share your Responses:

KSEEB Solutions 10 English Question 1.

Seamen expressing their discontent even as Columbus can hear them?

Answer:

The seamen had no fear about Colum-bus. They have unity and all were homesick and had no hope to get success. So they were expressing their discontentment even as Co-lumbus can hear.

English 10th KSEEB Solutions Question 2.

Pepe is heard saying, "They shan't"

a. Who is meant by 'they'?

b. What does the boy mean by saying 'They shan't'?

Answer:

a) They meant the crew or Seamen.

b) They shall not show, the mischief for the trouble maker.

Question 3.

"Santa Maria will be lighter for his carcass". Whose words are Pepe quoting here? (Choose the right answer and complete the sentence).

a) Diego

b) Francisco

c) Pedro

e) Guillermo Ires

Answer:

Pepe was quoting Guillermo Ires words.

Question 4.

Which statement of Francisco suggests that he too has lost his temper? Quote his words.

Answer:

Francisco had lost his temper. His words were "Discipline is a thing of past, Sir. It's you or us".

Share your Responses:

Question 1.

'Who's to put him in irons? challengers Guillerno. The person meant by 'him' in this context is:

a. Guillerno

b. The first man to move towards Columbus

c. Columbus

d. The first man who challenged Columbus

Answer:

The first man to move towards Columbus.

Question 2.

'I will perform it myself', says Columbus. What does 'it' mean here?

Answer:

'It' means that if nobody among the crew is available to put Guillermo in irons, Columbus would himself put Guillermo in irons.

Question 3.

'Devil's track to nowhere', says Guillermo. What does this suggest about the thinking of the seamen?

Answer:

Guillermo said the above words. The seamen thought that they were very clear that the track is not correct, it leads to nowhere, why should they take the risk for nothing.

Question 4.

After 'a perceptible pause', who grows more mutinous than others?

a. Name that character.

b. Quote his words.

Answer:

a. After a perceptible pause, Diego grew more mutinous than others. All are kept quiet except him. So he comments that.

b. Words for Children! Froth and Scum! We are men: reason with us.

Share your Responses:

Question 1.

In his somewhat a long speech, what does Columbus say he has discovered?

Answer:

In his long speech, Columbus said that he wanted to discover the New world but during his voyage, he discovered the new experience. That was when a man is given a vision, he must follow it alone. Loyalty passes like seaweed on an outgoing tide. Friendship breaks as a mast hollowed by worms. Discipline, duty and honorable obedience are bubbles that burst at the first contact. There remains but oneself.

Question 2.

Pepe excitedly declares that he is still loyal to the leader. What effect does it have on others like Juan and Guillermo?

Answer:

Pepe's declaration of loyalty on the face of mutiny from others has a dramatic effect. People like Juan, who haven't been rebellious like the other seamen, feel guilty over their behaviour and try to explain their behaviour by saying that they are simple men who go by their simple understanding of things.

Guillermo, though still surlily, states that things could be put off till the next day. Thus we see that Pepe's declaration of loyalty is a turning point in the course of events.

Question 3.

Compare Francisco's words of confession with what he had said earlier in anger. How does Columbus react to his confession?

Answer:

Francisco angrily said to Columbus that Desperate men do not always act up to the best in them. For this Columbus said ironically that he was thanked for reminding him. Francisco wanted to say something but he thought it was better to go and with shamefaced he went away. Columbus wished him goodnight.

Question 4.

How does Pedro react to the words of Columbus that he thought he saw some flickering light?

Answer:

When Don Pedro heard that there was some light, he felt excited and also he saw the light. He was very happy and with gratitude remembered God's glory or grace.

Question 5.

Do you consider the ending to be happy? Justify your answer.

Answer:

Yes, the ending was very happy. All their struggle came to a happy end. They got success in their adventure.

Think About The Text

Question 1.

'Mutiny is an ugly word', says, Diego. Is mutiny an ugly .word? If so, why?

Answer:

No, the word is not ugly. But the feeling of Diego about mutiny is ugly. The meaning of mutiny is a rebel. He did not like the rebel action of Seamen so he said like that.

Question 2.

'Columbus feels that whatever he does, it is God's will'. What 'will' of God does he like to ful-fill through this venture?

Answer:

Columbus had trust in God. He believes god. God's will is to discover the new world and it should be given to their King and Queen. God implanted the desire to solve the mysteries, that is to find the new world. According to Columbus, this is God's will and he should fulfill it.

Question 3.

Columbus says, "Would God implant desire to solve the mystery and he doesn't provide solutions?" Identify the mood of Columbus in saying this.

Answer:

Columbus had a firm will to discover the new world. By nature, he was a risk taker to achieve his goal. For his unshaky desire, his fellowmen were not supported. They have all opposed to him. At that situation, he thought about the above statement. He was in a helpless and confusion mood.

Question 4.

Pepe says, "Everybody doubts except me". Why do you think he is an exception?

Answer:

Pepe shares the vision of Columbus. It shows that, unlike the simple seamen with average intelligence and imagination, Pepe is especially gifted and understands the mystery that Columbus is trying to solve.

Question 5.

Usually, people feel desperate when they fail to get something they want. In the play 'The Discover', why do the crew-mates of Columbus feel desperate?

Answer:

All the crew-mates had lost their hope in the task. They lost their belief in a leader. According to them, their captain was wrong, he did not know the route exactly, they were homesick also. They were eager to join their families. They thought that taking so much risk to get nothing was of no use. So they felt desperate.

Question 6.

"Discipline knows no huts". Why is the discipline needed in one's life?

Answer:

To achieve something in the life discipline to necessary. Without discipline, we cannot get success in an adventurous task. So "Discipline knows no huts".

Question 7.

Comparing with his co-mates, Columbus makes some statements that he is different from others. One statement is given. Add some more statements to the list.

i. I am not ungrateful

Answer:

ii. It is my will. Is that not enough?

iii. Discipline knows no buts.

iv. I will perform it myself.

Question 8.

Self-assessment.

Question 9.

**How is the excitement of finding a new land expressed by different characters at the end of the play?
e.g. Pedro says, "It is, sir, Glory be to God"**

Answer:

Pedro says, "It is, sir, Glory be to God"

Sailor says, "A light! blessed mother of God! light".

Columbus says, "A light, faintly flickering, rises up and down. Look!"

Question 10.

'Your best cannot be bettered', says Columbus. This statement implies that.....

- a. None is perfect at any time.**
- b. There is always scope for improvement.**
- c. Once we reach the level of being best, we can never improve.**
- d. Columbus is not totally happy with Francisco.**

(Choose the best options)

Answer:

The statement implies that

- d. Columbus is not totally happy with Francisco.**

Question 11.

Swami Vivekananda says, "Purity, Patience, and Perseverance are the essentials to success And above all Love". Does Columbus possess all these qualities? Justify.

Answer:

On the one hand if we say that Columbus is impatient with the seamen, on the other we have to admit that as far as the pursuit of his goal is concerned, he is full of patience whereas other seamen are impatient and want to give up. Hence, when we consider the larger picture, we find Columbus

possessing the virtues of purity, patience and perseverance. Purity because he considers the expedition the will of God and pursues it with grit and determination. We should remember that, like the seamen, Columbus is also away from home and family. But he remains steadfast. As the captain of the ship the pressure on him is much more. Being doubted all the time can be stressful. But Columbus withstands all this because of his love for his work and love for God's mysteries.

Question 12.

Find below the words that refer to Columbus and words that refer to mutinous sailors. Classify them in Column A and B accordingly. Refer to a dictionary, if necessary. (revolting, sheepish, short-tempered, authoritative, bold, ungrateful, farsighted, submissive, silently angry, visionary, disloyal)

ABColumbus

authoritative

bold

farsighted

visionary

short-tempered

mutinous Sailors

revolting

sheepish

ungrateful

submissive

disloyal

silently angry

Question 13.

An incomplete paragraph is given below. Fill in the blanks choosing appropriate words and phrases given in brackets. (vision, faith, God, bursts, voyage, the end, seaweeds, new land, man)

Answer:

This discovery says Columbus is a man of discovery. Apart from discovering the new land, he has come to know about many things. First, he says, one has to depend on one's vision, not on the support of others. For, loyalty is as temporary as the seaweeds on a tide. In the beginning, there may be some discipline, but soon it bursts like a balloon. Ultimately what remains is faith in oneself. The daring nature of Columbus survives till the end. and he attributes his success to the blessings of God.

Enrich Your Vocabulary:

Task – 1: Look at the words given in the diagram. They are close in their meanings. Choose the most appropriate word from the diagram and fill in the blank.

e.g.,

Bhuvana: Hello! Students, I came to know that you are going to visit Mercara, aren't you? **Students:** Yes madam. It's rather hot here. So we would like to visit Mercara for the weather is pleasantly.....there.

Answer:

Cool.

Task -2: In each of the following diagrams one word is given. Find out words that belong to the same set of meaning given in the rectangle box and complete the respective diagram. Consult a good dictionary to know more words and meaning.

amazed, hardly, mammoth, border, astonished, scarcely, large, edge, enormous, verge, inadequately, shock, huge, meagerly, margin, abundant, rarely, limit, surprise, stun.

Task – 3: Now use the appropriate words in their appropriate forms to fill in the blanks in the following sentences:

1. The children were so excited they could ___ speak.
2. The chemical pollution poses a threat to the population on a ___ scale.
3. The mutinous sailors were ___ by the boldness of Pepe.
4. The noise ___ Ramesh, and he dropped his glasses on the floor.
5. Javeed, the policeman was ___ armed to face the robbers scarcely home alone.
6. They won a ___ victory in elections.

Answer:

1. The children were so excited they could hardly speak.
2. Chemical pollution poses a threat to the population on a large scale.
3. The mutinous sailors were astonished by the boldness of Pepe.
4. The noise stunned Ramesh, and he dropped his glasses on the floor.
5. Javeed, the policeman was inadequately armed to face the robbers scarcely home alone.
6. They won a marginal victory in elections.

Task – 4 :

We use many words to describe persons. Parts of the human body or appearance are given in bubbles in column 'A'. Describing words are given in rectangle boxes in column 'B'. Match them and write the answer in column 'C'

Task – 1: Listen to the teacher, repeat, classify and write in the respective columns.

Enrich Your Vocabulary

Seeking Permission

(Imagine Columbus meeting King Ferdinand II of Argon and Isabella I of Castle to seek their permission for his voyage to find sea-route to India. Complete the dialogues choosing sentences given in the box.

Columbus: Good morning, your Majesty.

Ferdinand: Very good morning.

Isabella: Columbus, are you ready with your plan?

Columbus: Yes, your Majesty, could I present my plans?

Isabella: First tell us about your destination.

Columbus: I have a great desire to find out sea route to India.

Isabella: Oh ! That's a good idea, but we 'd like to refer your plan to a committee.

Columbus: As your majesty desires. (After a long pause)

Isabella: Dear Columbus, our committee members feel that you have grossly under estimated the distance to India.

Columbus: I beg your pardon, they are wrong.

Isabella: They also feel your idea is impractical. In fact, they insisted that we reject it.

Columbus: Oh, no please don't do that. I've full confidence in what I'm going to do.

Isabella: In that case, will an allowance of 12,000 maravedis be enough ?

Columbus: Thank you so much. May I ask for something else, too?

Isabella: Of course, we'll. give an order to provide you with food and lodging until you get ready to sail.

Columbus: I'm extremely thankful for your majesty.

Isabella: May God bless you! Bon Voyage!

Read And Respond

Task – 1: Look at Graph ‘A’ It gives the information about the number of students who are late to the class on the working days. Based on your observation answer the questions are given below. For Graph see the textbook

Question 1.

The same numbers of students are late in two days. Which days are they?

Answer:

The two days are Tuesday and Thursday.

Question 2.

How many students are late on Friday?

Answer:

Fifteen students are late on Friday.

Question 3.

On which day are most of the students late?

Answer:

Monday, most of the students are late.

A. Fill in the blanks.

1. The graph shows the ___ read by ___ and ___.

2. On day 2, ___ read more books than ___.

Answer:

1. The graph shows the number of books read by Basava and Emily.

2. On day 2, Emily read more books than Basava.

B. Answer the following questions:

Question 1.

Until the fourth day, which student read books in increasing order?

Answer:

Until the fourth day, Basava read books in increasing order.

Question 2.

Name the day on which both the students read the same number of books.

Answer:

Both the students read the same number of books on the 4th day.

Question 3.

Name the days on which Emily read a number of books than Basava.

Answer:

Emily read a number of books than Basava on 2nd and 5th day.

Question 4.

Over a period of 5 days who between the two had improved his / her reading habits better?

Answer:

Emily's reading habit was improved.

Task -1 :

Some sentences are given in columns A and C. Some co-ordinating conjunctions are given in column B. Match and combine them to form compound sentences.

Answer :

- 1. Pepe stood at the stairs so the men could not go up**
- 2. They were singing and they were dancing**
- 3. Pepe was still a boy but he was bold.**
- 4. Columbus was an able leader or else his crew would have turned violent.**
- 5. We will reach the shore so God is our guide.**

The Discovery Additional Questions and Answers

I. Multiple Choice Questions

Question 1.

The discovery is the lesson written by

- a. Herman Ould**
- b. Coleridge**
- c. Shakespeare**
- d. James T. Fields**

Answer:

a. Herman Ould

Question 2.

Columbus first saw the light of the New World on the night of 11th October ____.

a. 1496

b. 1497

c. 1492

d. 1495

Answer:

c. 1492

Question 3.

The Devil laughs but God is

a. great

b. dumb

c. blind

d. kind

Answer:

b. dumb

Question 4.

The captain is always ____

a. smiling

b. commanding

c. laughing

d. furious

Answer:

d. furious

Question 5.

Pedro Gutierrez was a ____ in the ship

a. Captain

b. Manager

c. Officer

d. Traveller

Answer:

c. Officer

Question 6.

Diego said that mutiny is

a. an ugly word

b. suitable

c. perfect

d. right

Answer:

a. an ugly word

Question 7.

Columbus was the ___ of the ship.

a. Leader

b. Captain

c. Comedian

d. Traveller

Answer:

b. Captain

Question 8.

Columbus was a tall ___ man of forty-six

a. handsome

b. good – looking

c. smart

d. well built

Answer:

d. well built

Question 9.

His face, in repose, is ____

a. white

b. melancholic

c. fair complexion

d. pale

Answer:

b. melancholic

Question 10.

The candle on the foremast is ____

a. burning

b. not correct

c. guttering

d. not burning

Answer:

c. guttering

Question 11.

A good sailor knows his ____

a. job

b. work

c. place

d. duty

Answer:

c. place

Question 12.

The Seamen are simple men and must have their ____.

a. relaxation

b. duty

c. courage

d. work

Answer:

a. relaxation

Question 13.

According to Columbus Pepe was young enough to have ___.

a. belief

b. faith

c. responsibility

d. adventure

Answer:

b. faith

Question 14.

Pepe said that sometimes the Seamen are ___.

a. dangerous

b. attacking

c. desperate

d. kind

Answer:

c. desperate

Question 15.

Columbus's opinion that the Seamen showed their discontentment, that is ___.

a. not encourageable

b. not right

c. ominous

d. agreeable

Answer:

c. ominous

Question 16.

Pepe said that The Santa Maria will be the lighter for his ___.

- a. carcass
- b. freedom
- c. body
- d. friend

Answer:

- a. carcass

Question 17.

Francisco said that Discipline is a thing of the ___.

- a. future
- b. present
- c. past
- d. sailor

Answer:

- c. past

Question 18.

Columbus said that the first man to move shall spend the rest of the night ___.

- a. in the ship
- b. in irons
- c. in deck
- d. at the most

Answer:

- b. in irons

Question 19.

According to Columbus Don Guillermo was an excellent

- a. Navigator

b. Preacher

c. Man

d. Sailor

Answer:

d. Sailor

Question 20.

Froth and Scum means ____.

a. foolish

b. silly

c. courageous

d. brave

Answer:

b. silly

Question 21.

Diego asked Columbus that he thought he was on now?

a. Divine sea

b. Santa Maria

c. holy ground

d. Quarter – deck

Answer:

c. holy ground

Question 22.

Pepe said to crowd, Cowards! Cowards! you will have to __ first!

a. save me

b. kill me

c. protect me

d. give me

Answer:

b. kill me

Question 23.

Columbus said, new souls for the sacrifice of our ____ to redeem

a. Saviour

b. King

c. Queen

d. Captain

Answer:

a. Saviour

Question 24.

Columbus said, I am not ____ .

a. a king

b. saviour

c. captain

d. ungrateful

Answer:

d. ungrateful

Question 25.

Dark deeds are better done in the ____

a. light

b. dark

c. day

d. night

Answer:

b. dark

Question 26.

Shall simple men judge their ____ .

a. acts X

- b. works
- c. betters
- d. seamen

Answer:

- c. betters

Question 27.

Desperate men do not always act up to the ___.

- a. good
- b. better
- c. best
- d. worst

Answer:

- c. best

Question 28.

Your best cannot be ___.

- a. better
- b. bettered
- c. good
- d. worst

Answer:

- b. bettered

Question 29.

A light, faintly flickering, rises ___ .

- a. right and left
- b. front and back
- c. up and down
- d. side by side

Answer:

c. up and down

Question 30.

A good sailor knows his ____.

a. place

b. position

c. work

d. duty

Answer:

a. place

II. Match the following:

1.

Answer:

1 – d

2 – f

3 – a

4 – e

5 – b

6 – c

2.

Ans:

1 – f

2 – a

3 – e

4 – b

5 – c

6 – d

3.

Ans:

1 - b

2 - e

3 - f

4 - a

5 - c

6 - d

4.

Ans:

1 - e

2 - c

3 - a

4 - b

5 - f

6 - d

5.

Ans:

1 - d

2 - f

3 - a

4 - e

5 - b

6 - c

6.

Ans:

1 - f

2 - d

3 - a

4 - e

5 – b

6 – c

III. Give one word /phrase for the following:

Question 1.

The name of the ship in which Columbus discovered the New World.

Answer:

Santa Maria

Question 2.

Work of Sailing

Answer:

rigging

Question 3.

The pink and healthy

Answer:

ruddy

Question 4.

a break from work

Answer:

relaxation

Question 5.

to move from a higher level to a lower one

Answer:

descend

Question 6.

events not easily understood.

Answer:

mysteries

Question 7.

the high deck at the end of a ship.

Answer:

poop

Question 8.

to frighten or surprise suddenly.

Answer:

startle

Question 9.

amusingly in an intimate way.

Answer:

whimsically

Question 10.

without any fear.

Answer:

impetuously

Question 11.

to rise and fall forcefully

Answer:

surge

Question 12.

the dead body

Answer:

carcass

Question 13.

to shine dimly or intermittently

Answer:

blink

Question 14.

with great anger.

Answer:

infuriated

Question 15.

a lever or wheel controlling the rudder of a ship for steering.

Answer:

helm

Question 16.

to have the habit of doing something.

Answer:

won't

Question 17.

ability to do the right thinking.

Answer:

discretion

Question 18.

to arrange carelessly or hurriedly.

Answer:

huddle

Question 19.

in a sudden loud chor

Answer:

tumultuously

Question 20.

a sudden running of people excited or afraid.

Answer:

stampede

Question 21.

a derogatory word like “a book liker”.

Answer:

lick spittle

Question 22.

land to be owned.

Answer:

dominion

Question 23.

get something back.

Answer:

redeem

Question 24.

resembling a sheep in meekness.

Answer:

sheepish

Question 25.

discussing issues and making decisions carefully.

Answer:

deliberation

Question 26.

The captain of the ship “The Santa Maria”

Answer:

Christopher Columbus

Question 27.

An officer of the ship “The Santa Maria”.

Answer:

Pedro gutierrez

Question 28.

A page boy of this ship.

Answer:

Pepe

Question 29.

The author of the play “The Discovery”.

Answer:

Herman Ould

Question 30.

The group of seamen voyaging in the ship.

Answer:

Crew

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

Why does the crew say that the Devil and not God is in the easterly wind?

Answer:

Columbus and his crew have followed the easterly wind for days together without being able to sight land. So the crew says that the Devil and not God is in the easterly wind.

Question 2.

What is the significance of the song that the crew sings?

Answer:

The song is sung by the sailors who want to keep their spirits up. The song is sung in a drunken state and shows the despair of the sailors.

Question 3.

How did Pepe show his loyalty to Columbus?

Answer:

Pepe was the only person who had faith in Columbus and tried to warn him about how desperate the others had become. When the seamen rushed to kill Columbus, Pepe stood before them with his arms spread out and told them that they would have to kill him first. His loyalty put the others to shame. He liked Columbus because he had a vision, was a man of principles, who gave much importance to duty, discipline and loyalty and was also an eminent leader. So he always wanted to be in the company of Columbus.

Question 4.

'Devil's track to nowhere says Guillermo. What does this suggest about the thinking of the seamen?

Answer:

Guillermo and other sailors feel that Columbus is rigid in not changing his decision. They opine that he is stupid in following his vision and dream. They think that if they continue their voyage, it will be a pointless voyage of self-destruction. Their path, according to them, is devil's path to nowhere. It shows that the sailors have reached the tether's end and have no more tolerance.

Answer the following questions in 5-6 / 8-10 sentences each:

Question 1.

How does Columbus deal with the mutiny on the ship?

Answer:

In his tackling of the mutiny Columbus shows what mettle leaders are made of. He doesn't lose his composure even when he realises that there is danger to his life. When Guillermo and other sailors charge towards Columbus murderously, it is the authoritative voice of Columbus that checks them. Columbus tries to reason with them also. He tells Guillermo that just as he (Columbus) follows the order of the Royal of Spain, Guillermo should follow the order of Columbus. When even that fails, Columbus is an embittered man. He tells Pepe that a man of vision has to be necessarily a loner with no one to go with him.

Question 2.

What did the crew want to do to Columbus? Why did they not succeed in their plan?

Answer:

The frustrated crew wants to put Columbus in irons as he doesn't yield to their demand to end the voyage. However, the fearless confrontation of Pepe does not allow them to succeed. As Diego and other seamen bound towards the stairs to have Columbus down or pitch him overboard, Pepe runs to the foot of the stairs and stands with arms spread out. Pepe's open avowal of support makes Pedro also pledge his loyalty, followed by Juan and Francisco. Guillermo and others mellow down and thus a bloody scene is averted by Pepe.

Question 3.

Describe the qualities that made Columbus a great sailor and explorer.

Answer:

Columbus is a great sailor because when the other sailors lose their patience because of the endless voyage, Columbus retains his cool. He believes in his mission and despite the initial delay and problem, finally succeeds in achieving his goal. He knows how to tackle the people under him. From the seamen to Pedro, Columbus understands the mind of each of his sailors. Columbus is indeed a great sailor and explorer.

Question 4.

“Discipline knows no buts”. What made Columbus says this?

Answer:

Columbus comes to know that the sailors have been speaking ill of him and have even been talking about his carcass. So Columbus wants to control the rebellion and asks Francisco to send Guillermo to him. Francisco, fearing further altercation between Columbus and the sailors, tries to stop Columbus from taking any harsh step. It is then that Columbus says, “Discipline knows no buts.” He means to say that whatever might the reason be, the indiscipline of the sailors cannot be tolerated.

Question 5.

Illustrate how Columbus and his seamen differed in their views in the voyage of ‘The Discovery’.

Answer:

Columbus was an ambitious man. He had a great vision of discovering a new world. He was optimistic, hopeful, courageous in his voyage. He never wanted to turn back despite his crew’s opposition. He was faithful to the Royal Sovereigns of Spain. He was a disciplined sailor and an authoritative captain. On the contrary, many of the seamen did not share the vision and passion of Columbus.

They were pessimistic in their opinions. They feared losing their lives in the sea. They thought that Columbus was risking their lives at the cost of his vision. They were angry, frustrated and simple-minded men; they even planned to kill Columbus and throw him into the sea and sail back to Spain. They even warned him to turn back the ship. They lacked discipline, loyalty and obedience to their captain, Columbus.

Question 6.

“Patience has its limits.” Substantiate the statement in view of the seamen’s desperation.

Answer:

Herman Ould’s play ‘The Discovery’ dramatizes the events on the last night of Christopher Columbus’ sailing expedition to search for a sea-route to India. The crew is restless at the outset and becomes eager for a fight as the play unfolds. The high-handed attitude of Columbus and absence of sympathy for the justified complaints of the crew, lead to a situation close to mutiny.

Columbus is authoritative and stern. He is a strict disciplinarian. He does not seem to understand the sentiments of the crew members who have been away from home, are tired and have no hope of sighting the land. They grow angry and mutinous. One such rebellious sailor is Diego. He openly tells Pedro that patience has its limits and all sailors had lost their patience and wanted to return to Spain.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

“What! Does that child stand between me and death?” said Columbus.

a) When did Columbus say this?

b) Who is the child?

c) What had the child done?

Answer:

a) Columbus said this when Pepe stopped the revolting sailors from attacking him.

b) Pepe.

c) Pepe had stood between Columbus and the revolting sailors telling them that they would have to kill him first before getting to Columbus.

Question 2.

“A good sailor knows his place”.

a) To whom was this said?

b) Was Columbus giving a piece of advice or was it an indirect command?

c) What was Diego’s reaction?

Answer:

a) Diego.

b) Columbus wanted to point out to Diego that he had no right to be on the quarter-deck. It is an indirect command.

c) Diego tries to suppress his anger. He goes off from there with a scowl.

Question 3.

“Once clear of the Devil’s track to nowhere, we’ll blow our way back home.”

a) Who made this statement?

b) What does ‘Devil’s track to nowhere’ suggest about the thinking of the seamen?

c) How did they prove to be wrong?

Answer:

a) Guillermo.

b) The seamen felt that Columbus was perhaps possessed by the Devil. He was risking their lives and taking them on a voyage which would take them nowhere.

c) Very soon, land was sighted and a New World was discovered. So they proved to be wrong.

Question 4.

“Discipline knows no buts”.

- a) Who said these words?
- b) When does he say this?
- c) What did he mean to say by these words?

Answer:

- a) Columbus.
- b) Columbus asks Francisco to bring Guillermo Ires to him for speaking against him. Francisco hesitates to obey his order. It is then Columbus says these words to Francisco.
- c) Columbus meant that one should not hesitate to enforce discipline.

Question 5.

Here's a keg o' rum To Kingdom Come!

The Devil laughs

But God is dumb!

- a) Who sang this song?
- b) What emotion is expressed in the song?
- c) Why was this song repeated throughout the journey?

Answer:

- a) The seamen.
- b) The sailors are dejected as they have not sighted land even after many days of the voyage.
- c) They sing the song throughout the journey to keep their spirits from sagging.

Question 6.

“It is, Sir! Glory be to God!”

- a) Who said this?
- b) Who is the ‘sir’ mentioned here?
- c) Why did he thank God?

Answer:

- a) Pedro.
- b) Columbus.

c) Pedro was a witness to the mutiny of the sailors against Columbus. Though the situation was brought under control, he knew that trouble would shoot up again if people had to continue their dreary journey. So, when land was sighted, he was greatly relieved and thanked God.

Question 7.

“Discipline is a thing of the past, sir. It’s you or us.

- a) Who made this statement?
- b) Who is the ‘you* referred to here?
- c) What made the speaker say these words?

Answer:

- a) Francisco.
- b) The sailors.
- c) When Columbus asks Francisco to bring Guillermo to him for speaking against him, Francisco hesitates to obey his order. Columbus remarks that discipline knows no buts. It is then that Francisco makes this remark.

THE DISCOVERY SUMMARY IN ENGLISH.

“The Discovery ” is the play written by Herman Ould. This play is based 0 Christopher Colum bus’s the real voyage He was succeeded in this feat even though his crew was opposing him in the task. He saw the light of the New World on the night of 11th October 1492. Based on this, Herman Ould builds up a conflict of great imagination. We came to know that how this conflict was resolved by the author.

The characters of the play

Christopher Columbus – Captain of the ship “The Santa Maria”.

Don Pedro Gutierrez – an officer

Pepe – a page boy

Jhan Patino

Diego Garcia

Seamen

Francisco

Guillermo Ires

The semen was singing that there was a small barrel of rum, the kingdom came, the devil laughs but God was dumb. Whenever Columbus heard this song, he was furious. Juan thought that to stop the

singing. Diego was protested that to keep themselves lively, they would sing. They pretended to be working with interest. At that time Pedro Gutierrez came and asked who was that? Diego Garcia that Juan Patino stood and said they were there. Pedro was surprised to see them there. He wanted to talk and said It's dark and he would welcome the moon. Diego said that some of them would welcome the coast of Spain.

Pedro questioned him why was he impatient. Diego said that there are some limits to patients. Most of the crew seamen were desperate and they had no patience, they wanted to go home. w Diego continued his talk and said that they were like bats trying to fly by day. Why should he control the fifty men by one man? (Captain – Columbus). For Pedro said that they were not entertaining rebellious thoughts. Diego said that the word is too ugly but Pedro said that their deed was ugly. Juan finished his job and went away. Columbus came.

He was the captain of the ship. He was a tall, well-built man. Though he was 46 his hair was prematurely white, fair complexion almost pink and healthy. He looks trustworthy but very sad. He saw that Don Pedro was talking with Diego and felt a little suspicious. He turned to Diego and said that the candle on the foremost was unsteady, make it right. Diego felt angry but kept quiet.

Columbus warned him what he' was doing he must know his place. Diego was not hiding his feeling, went away. Again Columbus heard Seamen s song. Both Columbus and Pedro moved to the quarter deck. Columbus said to Pedro that the Seamen drank too much. Pedro replied that they were simple men and they drank for relaxation, and we shouldn't put our visions on them. Impatiently Columbus said that it was his will, that is enough. Columbus understood the situation and asked sorry and said that I should control my tongue, here my will means God s will, that was not enough. Pedro not satisfied by his talk and said that he didn't claim his conflict.

Again they heard the Seamen song, Columbus shouted, and cursed their singing and command them to stop. Pedro went off. Columbus was alone, looking into the sea, and said to himself. Why God would implant the desire and not provide the solution, what a mystery? Suddenly Pepe runs up and Columbus frightened or surprised to see him and asked who was that. Pepe said that was he, Pepe. When Columbus asked him, whether he had been there all the time. Pepe replied that he was off duty. Columbus questioned him why he wasn't down below. Pepe thought he was privileged and said that he prefers to accompany him only if he was on the way to come there.

He didn't speak to them and hated them. Don Pedro was the best and said that except him all had doubts. Columbus said that Pepe was too young to have faith and thank him. Again they heard the Seamen song. Pepe talked to please Columbus so he said that the Seamen were horrible and drank too much to forget themselves. Columbus said they were poor fellows. Pepe came nearer to Columbus and said that "Captain, you should be careful, sometimes they are dangerous ".

Again they heard the song. Now the song is sung forcefully. Columbus said that it was very ugly. He commanded Don Pedro to stop the song and asked that what you think about the seamen, might they become dangerous? Don Pedro returns. Columbus said Pepe to go from that place. But he didn't go out. Again he questioned Don Pedro, that the singing changes to a roar. This shows their discontentment, it was bad. The noise became louder.

Pedro came and said that the Seamen were ignoring his order. Columbus got angry and asked them to show who was that mischief or trouble maker. Columbus asked Pepe what were the words. Almost

weeping, he said that The Santa Maria would be the lighter for his dead body; Columbus bitterly asked that he said readily.

Francisco apologized and he could understand that what were the feelings of Columbus. Columbus asked him to the Guillermo Ires. Francisco said that it was most possible. Columbus said that it is discipline to obey the order. Francisco said that in that situation descriptive was the thing of the past. Then Columbus said Don Pedro to send him, whether he shall know how the Jail condition should be.

When Don Pedro on his halfway, Guillermo Ires and other seamen rushed towards Columbus. They were all very angry and like the infuriated animals. Seeing this Columbia thundered and made them stop. He said if they move forward the first man should spend his night in the jail. (All were kept quiet and nobody moves. Guillero Ires came towards Columbus with a wild cry).

Guillemo questioned that they were thirty members, who were put into jail. Columbus very calmly said that if nobody was there, he would only reform it himself and he was not ready to listen anymore. Guillemo with high excitement asked that they stood too much. They were all common men with feelings. They want to go back home and join their families. He said that Santa Maria shall turn her lever towards Spain at once, otherwise we were all sheep but not men at all. Columbus asked who shall navigate her to Spain.

Guillemo answered that Plenty of the people there to do this. They all understood that Columbus had devil with him, he didn't know the correct route, simply going to eastwards what was the use. All of them lost their hopes if the easterly wind comes they were not men unused to the sea. That Devil's track leads them to nowhere, it was better to go back to home. All the Seamen showed no signs of assent.

Columbus appealing for silence. He was paler than his habit but very calm. Columbus wanted to convince Don Guillermo so he said that Guillermo was an excellent sailor and a man of abundant resourcefulness. He had the ability to do the right thinking, so he did not run away from that. Definitely, he would achieve prosperity. He would an able-bodied seaman, he must obey his captain.

And captain should obey the Royal Sovereigns of Spain those who sent. It should be clear that they shall not fall out of the task. Columbus commanded them to return to their duties. Again an understandable stop or interval. Diego breaks out the silence and said that these were the words for children, it was silly, they were a man and had reason with them. Columbus made them silent.

His tone of authority calms the angry seamen, they were murmuring but Columbus turns and went up to the stairs where he stands and looks down. Diego asked Columbus that was he on the holy ground? Suddenly a loud chorus was heard. They shouted as to have him down, Pitch him overboard, Put him in jail, Devil's tool, Italian enemy, etc.,

They were running towards Columbus. Pepe came in- between and stands with arms spread out. Pepe shouted to seamen, they were all Cowards, First, they would have killed, him. The crowd roared and attacked Pepe and said to him that he was a Devil's dog. Columbus came forward and said that, is this child stand between him and death? Silence follows. Columbus gave a speech.

This is a voyage of discovery. I set out to discover a New World, that is beyond unknown seas; to find new wealth. This is all for our King and Queen. We should sacrifice to get something back to God. But I have discovered that when a man is given a vision, he should follow loyalty passes like a seaweed and

friendship breaks as 'a mast. Discipline, duty and honorable obedience are like bubbles that burst at the first touch.

So far I discovered these. Pepe said that he was loyal and obedient and devoted servant to captain. Columbus said with some emotion that he was not ungrateful. Pedro with dignity said that his loyalty had never been in question and he salutes. Columbus also salutes to Pedro and said that sometimes he was silent but his speech revealed his loyalty clear. For that captain thanked him.

Columbus turns and looks out at sea. He looks more earnestly into the darkness. Some men moved, the captain turns back. Juan said that they were simple men. for that captain questioned shall simple men judge their better? At that moment Guillermo took a decision and said confidently that they may wait till the next day.

Columbus said that Dark deeds are better done in the dark. Guillermo went and one or two seamen followed him. Francisco comments that violent men do not always act up to the best, that is in them. Columbus quiet ironically thanked Francisco for reminding him and said that your best cannot be bettered. He wished him good night and stop the conversation. Francisco wanted to speak but he thought that it was better to go and went away.

During the silence Columbus didn't move, he was struggling with excessive nervousness. Because of his emotion, he didn't speak steadily. He said Pepe to go out. Pepe took his hand, kissed it and goes out Columbus turned to Don Pedro and shared his experience that he was the faintly flickering light rises up and down. Don Pedro saw in that particular direction and he also observed the light.

Simultaneously the chorus shopped with joy. A light! Land! Land! A Sailor comes running on with joy and excitement. Sailor asked Columbus that did he see the light? All were made with joy and with gratitude prayed. At last Mother of God blessed them. Columbus quite authoritatively said to Don Pedro that he should give the order to stop the ship at land. Finally, they discovered the New World.

BALLAD OF THE TEMPEST

Ballad of the Tempest Poem Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

Ballad Of The Tempest Notes Question 1.

'We were crowded in the cabin, Not a soul would dare to sleep'

- a. Who does the word 'we' refer to here?
- b. Not a soul would dare to sleep-why was it so?

Answer:

- a. Here we refer to the group of sailors in that particular ship.
- b. In the midnight during the winter season, their ship caught by the violent storm. So the sailors would not dare to sleep because of fear.

Ballad Of The Tempest Question 2.

The poet says ‘This is a fearful thing in winter....’ According to the poet, what is referred to as a fearful thing in winter? How would be the condition in the deep sea during winter on the sea?

Answer:

The sailors need to carry life jackets. There should also be small boats which might be of use if the ship is wrecked. The sailors need to be good swimmers. They should have good knowledge of the direction of the wind, sea, and sea creatures.

Ballad Of The Tempest Questions And Answers Question 3.

How does ‘it’ affect the sailors? (Read the first two stanzas)

Answer:

During winter the seawater will be very chill and became frozen into ice. If the ship shattered, the condition would be serious. The sailors had to face many difficulties. It affects the sailors to death. The rescue was a formidable task.

Ballad Of The Tempest Summary Question 4.

The speaker and his crew-mates sat in darkness and prayed. What did they hear?

Answer:

When the speaker and his crewmates were busy with their prayers, they heard the shout of the captain that they were lost.

Ballad Of Tempest Notes Question 5.

When the captain shouted “We are lost”, how did his daughter react?

Answer:

The captain’s daughter was little and innocent. In this situation, she reacted calmly. She took the captain’s cold hand and whispered. God is there upon the sea as God on the land. God was the same everywhere.

Ballad Of The Tempest Poem Pdf Question 6.

The crew-mates kissed the maiden and spoke in better cheers. What made them feel cheerful?

Answer:

By hearing the innocent words of the little maiden, the crew-mates got some hope. The sudden changes occurred in their heart. They kissed her and cheered up.

Ballad Of The Tempest Poem Notes Question 7.

‘A ship is always safe at the shore, But it was not built for that’. What does this mean?

Answer:

The ship was built to sail on the sea and ocean. If we keep the ship at the shore, it is safe. But what is the use? Ships sail on the sea, it should face the dangers that would come across. Then only its purpose survived. So it was not built to keep at the shore. Similarly, the man was born to some purpose, if he was not ready to face the problems or challenges of life, what is the use of his life. So we are ready to face the challenges.

Read And Appreciate

10th English Ballad Of The Tempest Notes Question 1.

The poet uses the phrase ‘the hungry sea’. What can the reader imagine from this?

Answer:

The hungry sea means, the sea wanted something to eat. When the violent storm was deep and the ship was going to wreck. The seamen or the sailors had to face great risk. In this situation, the crew might think that they might become victims. They would feel like this because of fear. The reader could imagine that sailor’s life is not safe. The figure of speech employed in lines 11 and 12 is personification.

Ballad Of The Tempest Poem Summary In English Question 2.

The poet uses expressions which are unusual, evocative, and rhythmic. Some examples are given with explanations.

Answer:

i Shattered by the blast – Onomatopoeia

ii Midnight on the waters – the image of one imposing (covering) on the other.

iii. breakers talked with death – Personification

iv. Captain staggered down the stairs – the image of movement.

v. icy hand – (tactile) sense of touch.

Ballad of the Tempest Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Ballad Of The Tempest Poem Question 1.

James Thomas Fields wrote the poem by the name ____

- a. Ballad of the Tempest
- b. Anniversary poem
- c. Book of Ballads
- d. Ballads and verses

Answer:

a. Ballad of the Tempest

Summary Of Ballad Of The Tempest Question 2.

The tempert means __

- a. temperature
- b. wind
- c. wind on sea
- d. a violent storm

Answer:

- d. a violent storm

The Ballad Of The Tempest Summary Question 3.

Fortune favours the __

- a. devotees
- b. brave
- c. poets
- d. sailors

Answer:

- b. brave

Ballad Of The Tempest Poem Summary Question 4.

In this peom, the Sailors face a great ____

- a. danger
- b. sea whale
- c. rock
- d. peril

Answer:

- d. peril

Ballad Of Tempest Summary Question 5.

The sailors were crowded in the

- a. Cabin

- b. room
- c. temple
- d. at sea shore

Answer:

- a. Cabin

Ballad Of The Tempest Summary Pdf Question 6.

The storm is a fearful thing in ____

- a. Summer
- b. Rainy season
- c. Winter
- d. Autumn

Answer:

- c. Winter

Ballad Of The Tempest Solutions Question 7.

It was a __ on the waters

- a. day
- b. midnight
- c. night
- d. evening

Answer:

- b. midnight

Ballad Of The Tempest Notes Pdf Question 8.

To hear the rattling ____

- a. Cabin
- b. mast
- c. trumpet
- d. deck

Answer:

c. trumpet

Ballad Of The Tempest 10th Poem Summary Question 9.

We __ there in silence.

a. shout

b. whisper

c. spoke

d. shuddered

Answer:

d. shuddered

Question 10.

The ___ held his breath

a. man

b. crew

c. stoutest

d. seamen

Answer:

c. stoutest

Question 11.

The hungry sea was __

a. eating

b. roaring

c. shouting

d. jumping

Answer:

b. roaring

Question 12.

The ___ talked with death

a. breakers

- b. crew
- c. captain
- d. sea

Answer:

- a. breakers

Question 13.

Thus we sat in ___

- a. cabin
- b. room
- c. kitchen
- d. darkness

Answer:

- d. darkness

Question 14.

Each one busy with his ____

- a. shedule
- b. work
- c. prayers
- d. task

Answer:

- c. prayers

Question 15.

The captain shouted that “ ___ ”

- a. we won
- b. we are lost
- c. we get it
- d. we succeeded

Answer:

d. we succeeded

Question 16.

His little daughter ____

a. singing

b. dancing

c. playing

d. whispered

Answer:

d. whispered

Question 17.

As she took his ____

a. icy hand

b. hand

c. bag

d. food

Answer:

a. icy hand

Question 18.

Isn't ____ upon the ocean, just the same as on the land?

a. whale

b. Seamen

c. God

d. man

Answer:

c. God

Question 19.

Then we kissed the little ____

a. girl

b. boy

c. child

d. maiden

Answer:

d. maiden

Question 20.

We __ in better cheer.

a. ask

b. spake

c. worship

d. get

Answer:

b. spake

Question 21.

We __safe in the harbor.

a. guarded

b. watched

c. anchored

d. sit

Answer:

c. anchored

Question 22.

When the morn was __ clear.

a. shining

b. going

c. rising

d. founding

Answer:

a. shining

Question 23.

James Thomas Fields delivered his ___ poem to the Boston Mercantile Library.

a. famous

b. anniversary

c. little

d. well known

Answer:

b. anniversary

II Match the following :

Answer:

1 – d

2 – e

3 – a

4 – f

5 – b

6 – c

III. Give one word for the following:

Question 1.

A narrative composition in rhythmic verse suitable for singing.

Answer:

Ballad

Question 2.

A violent storm.

Answer:

Tempest

Question 3.

A private room on a ship or boat.

Answer:

Cabin

Question 4.

to break apart.

Answer:

Shatter

Question 5.

to make a rapid succession of short sharp noises.

Answer:

rattle

Question 6.

A device of metal attached to a ship ‘ or boat by a cable and cast overboard to hold it in a particular place.

Answer:

Anchor

Question 7.

Large turbulent waves moving towards the land.

Answer:

Breakers

Question 8.

to come unsteadily

Answer:

Stagger

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

What picture of the sea does the poet create in the poem ‘The Ballad of the Tempest’?

Answer:

The picture of the sea is of destruction. The poet creates the picture of the sea as a monster ready to swallow everything including the ship. It is as if the sea colludes with death to destroy the sailors.

Question 2.

The sailors in 'Ballad of the Tempest' shuddered in silence. When did they do so?

Answer:

The sailors were huddled in the cabin as there was a storm raging outside. When the captain ordered the mast to be cut so as to save the vessel, the sailors shuddered in silence.

Answer the following questions in 6-8 sentences each:

Question 1.

What is a ballad? What features of a ballad do you see in this poem?

Answer:

A ballad is a long narrative poem set to music. A story or an incident is narrated in a ballad. Ballads are known for the simple language employed and mental pictures or images created. Usual figures of speech and stock phrases are used. We see that in the poem, the poet narrates the fearful incidents of one night and makes the narration descriptive with mental imagery. Although it is a poem revolving around the emotion of fear, there is an easy rhythmic flow which makes the poem musical.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

We were crowded in the cabin,

Not a soul would dare to sleep.

- a) Who were crowded in the cabin? OR Who does 'we' refer to?
- b) Why were they crowded?
- c) Why did none of them dare to sleep?

Answer:

- a) The sailors.
- b) They were crowded in the cabin as the sea was on storm and they thought their end was near.
- c) All the sailors were worried about the impending storm and hence none dared to sleep.

Question 2.

"Isn't God upon the ocean,

Just the same as on the land?"

- a) Who asked the question? OR Who is the speaker?
- b) Why does the speaker say this?
- c) What effect did it have on the sailors? OR How does the statement have an impact on others?
- d) How does the poet highlight the power of faith through these lines?

Answer:

- a) The captain's daughter.
- b) She said so because the captain said that they were lost and declared his fears about their safety.
- c) On hearing the little girl, the despondent sailors cheered up, believing in the protective love of God towards them.
- d) Though the sailors had been praying, they did not completely believe in their prayer and thought their end was near. But the faith of the little girl transformed them and they placed themselves fully in the care of God and were saved.

Question 3.

“Isn't God upon the ocean Just the same as on the land.”

- a) Who asked this question?
- b) When did the speaker say so?
- c) What does it mean?

Answer:

- a) The captain's little daughter.
- b) When the captain was shouting desperately that they were lost.
- c) It means that God is omnipresent and will protect his children on land and ocean. It is necessary that we submit ourselves to the complete care and protection of God and let His will have its way.

Question 4.

“We are lost”, shouted the captain.

- a) Who does 'we' refer to?
- b) Why did the speaker make the statement?
- c) What reaction did the speaker get?

Answer:

- a) The ship with its crew.

b) The crew is all crowded in the cabin as the sea is on storm and they think their end is near. They shudder at the thought of the hungry sea roaring in rage, ready to devour them all. The captain himself, having lost hope, announces that they are lost.

c) When the captain said so, his little daughter calmly took his hand and reminded him that the Lord, who protected his people on the land, will protect them out on the sea too. The little girl's faith in God revived the faith of the sailors too and instead of growing more and more despondent, they grew hopeful and cheerful.

Ballad of the Tempest Poem Summary in English.

“Ballad of the Tempest” was written by James Thomas Fields. Once a ship was caught by the violent storm. In this poem, the poet describes the situation and condition of the sailors. The poem is a ballad and it is one of the poet's masterpiece. Here the speaker of the poem is the Sailor. Really voyage on the sea is an adventurous task. Here the poem starts in which the sailors had to face great danger. The ship was caught by the violent storm at midnight. All the sailors had crowded in the cabin.

Though it was midnight no one dared to sleep. All were frightened. The storm was very deep. It was fearful because it was winter season. The ship was to break apart by the gust of wind. The sailors heard the rattling sound of the trumpet and someone thundered to cut away the mast. All sailors were in silence out of fear. Even the strongest brave person had held his breath. The sea was roaring like a hungry lion. The large turbulent waves talked with death and moving towards the land. All were sitting in darkness.

Everyone was praying God for their safety. At that moment the captain shouted that they were lost. When he was coming unsteadily down the stairs, his little daughter by her innocent heart whispered. She took her father's cold hands and said that the God upon the ocean was the same as on land isn't it? By hearing her talk all got some hope and prayed the God earnestly. All were kissed the little maiden. Suddenly the astonishing change occurs, and the sailors anchored the ship safely in harbour. The morning in the sky was shining very clearly. The danger which comes like a mountain could disappear like sand. Fortune favours the brave. God is everywhere but man has faith in him.

COLOURS OF SILENCE

Colours of Silence Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

Colours Of Silence Notes Question 1.

Surender, a friend of Satish came to visit him. Satish hadn't gone to school Why?

Answer:

On that particular day, Satish was not feeling well and he was seriously ill, so he hadn't gone to school.

10th English Colours Of Silence Notes Question 2.

Identify the sentence – a question-that suggests Satish’s weakness. (Para.5)

Answer:

When Surrender came to visit him, Satish asked him, ‘Why are you speaking so softly? This question suggests the weakness of Satish.

Colour Of Silence Notes Question 3.

Why was Satish confined to bed? What was the worst thing for him? Why was it so? (Para. 12)

Answer:

Satish met with an accident when he had gone hiking with his father and brother. He had to undergo several operations to set his leg right. In addition, he suffered from frequent bouts of fever and infection, especially of the ear. The worst was the silence that surrounded him as a result of the infection in the ear, as he lay confined to the bed.

Colours Of Silence Summary Question 4.

The school he was attending informed Satish’s father about something. Can say what it was.

Answer:

The school authorities informed that they couldn’t keep Satish in their school because he was irregular and had a hearing problem.

Colors Of Silence Notes Question 5.

Satish didn’t want to go to a new school. What was the reason?

Answer:

Satish was a very sensitive and delicate boy. He had hesitation to talk to other children and had a fear that they would make fun of him for his disability (deafness). The children at a new school were new to him, So he didn’t want to join a new school.

Share your Responses :

Colours Of Silence Question Answer Question 1.

After a lot of persuasions, Satish agreed to go to a new school. Do you think he was accepted at the new school?

Answer:

Satish was not accepted at the new school because he was deaf and he was not able to speak correctly. He had a hearing problem.

Colours Of Silence Lesson Notes Question 2.

What made Avtar Narain angry? (Para 15 & 16)

Answer:

The headmaster of the new school suggested that Avtar Narain take his son to the school for deaf and dumb children. This suggestion angered Avtar Narain as he was of the opinion that his son was not dumb and his hearing would improve with treatment.

Colours Of Silence Questions And Answers Question 3.

The word 'Expedition' in para 18 means

- a) journey visit
- b) Mountaineering (Choose the right answer)

Answer:

- a) journey visit

Colours Of Silence Questions Answers Question 4.

How did Satish's brother Inder try to help him?

Answer:

Satish's elder brother Inder took care of him. Every time he sits beside his brother, spoke with him taught new words and pronunciation to him. Inder spent most of his time with his brother.

Colours Of Silence Summary In English Question 5.

Guess the meaning of these words from the context.

snatches (Para 15)

shattered (Para 18)

brooded (Para 20)

confined (Para 21)

verify the correctness of answer with the help of a dictionary The meanings of the words.

Answer:

snatches = parts

shattered = helpless

brooded = thinking or meditate deeply

confined=keep within the limits

But the dictionary meanings for the same words

Snatches (n) = an attempt to seize, a small piece or quantity

shattered = to break into pieces, to upset, ruin

brooded = to sit on eggs, to think anxiously for some time

confined = to shut up, imprisoned

Share your Responses :

Colours Of Silence Question Answers Question 1.

What did Satish see at the far corner of the garden? Why did it attract him? (Para-22)

Answer:

Satish saw a rare bird, which was unlike and he had never seen that type of bird before. That bird had a longish tail and black crest. It had restless energy. Its eyes kept moving here and there, and the bird was ready for flight at any moment. So he was attracted to it.

Colours Of Silence Summary In Kannada Question 2.

Both the parents were his well-wishers. But, each cared for him in a different way. How? (Para-24,25)

Answer:

Satish's father, who was deeply troubled by the misfortune that had befallen his son, wanted to make sure that his son did not lag behind in any area of study though he had stopped going to school. So he wanted Satish to read voraciously and be prepared to go back to school once his hearing impairment was set right. He opposed Satish's interest in drawing for he thought drawing couldn't be taken up as a career and it wouldn't help Satish earn money.

Narain remained optimistic that Satish would come back to the normal state of affairs. Satish's mother, on the other hand, had seen Satish suffering for more than three years and felt hopeless about his condition. Her motherly instinct was to make Satish happy in his world of silence. So she didn't want her husband to take away from Satish his source of entertainment. We see that both of them are right in their own way. Both of them love Satish and want to do their best for him.

Colours Of Silence Notes Pdf Question 3.

Which action of Satish changed his father's attitude? (Para-29)

Answer:

Satish had very good skills in painting. He did his painting with devoted and dedicated interest. He got much pleasure in painting. One day though Satish knew his father was not pleased with his painting pastime, he was immersed and busy in painting. By seeing all these, his father's attitude was completely changed and he agreed to continue and encouraged him a lot.

Colours Of Silence 10th Lesson Question 4.

What was Satish unable to believe? Para-30

Answer:

Satish's father came and sat beside his son and understood his feelings. Then decided to encourage him. He brought the necessary things to paint and found the best Art school. He was ready to admit in that school All these changes of his father was unbelievable to Satish.

Colours Of Silence Extracts Question 5.

How did Satish express his gratitude to his father? (Para-33)

Answer:

Satish wondered at the beginning, his eyes were filled .with tears out of joy, he came and hugged his father. His heart was full of love and gratitude.

Share your Responses :

10th English Colours Of Silence Summary Question 1.

Name any three fields in which Satish Gujral has made his name. (Para-35)

Answer:

Satish Gujral has made his name in painting, sculpture, and architecture.

10th English Lesson Colours Of Silence Question 2.

How can you say that Satish became popular all over the world? (Para.36)

Answer:

His works were exhibited almost all parts of the world and displayed in prestigious museums like the Museum of Modem Art, New work, The Hiroshima Collection, Washington and the National Gallery of Modem Art, New Delhi. So he became popular all over the world.

Color Of Silence Question 3.

If you are asked to give another title to this Story, what title would you suggest? Justify your choice.

Answer:

If we want to give another title to this story I suggest

“The Successful disabled”

This story reveals the success and the disabled got very prestigious award Padma Vibhushaa

“The Silent Artist” Though he lived in a silent world, he became a famous artist and awarded many titles.

Think About The Text

Class 10th English Chapter 7 Question Answer Question 1.

How did Satish meet with an accident? Do you think the accident occurred due to his carelessness?

Answer:

During his holiday, Satish went to Kashmir with his father and brother. While he was crossing a weak bridge he and his brother stood upon the same bridge. They were seeing the swirling water below. Out of curiosity, Satish wanted to show it to his brother, just then he was losing his balance and fell into the water. Like this the accident took place. No, this accident was not happened to him by his carelessness. It was only of his bad hick and instantaneously it happened.

Question 2.

The writer describes the effect of the accident in paragraph 12. One such effect is given here. Write to others in the space provided.

Answer:

e.g.

1. He wanted to scream but he couldn't
2. He felt that some huge weight was pressing upon his head.
3. He felt everything seemed for away and silent.
4. Everything seemed like scenes from the drama (Pantomime)
5. He felt helpless and upset.

Question 3.

Some words are given below. Choose the words that reflect the feelings of Satish after Surender left.- angry, miserable disappointed, lovely, sad, surprised, elated, shocked, helpless.

e.g. – miserable

Answer:

The words that reflect the feelings of Satish after Surender left were miserable, dis-appointed, sad, shocked, helpless.

Question 4.

Father, mother, and brother all tried to help Satish in their own way. Some of their actions are given below. Against each of these actions mention whose role was major in it by writing 'F' (father), 'M' (mother) and 'B' (brother) in brackets. One example is given.

giving Satish company – B

caring for his future – F

teaching him pronunciation – B

caring more for his present state – M

meeting institutional heads – F

finding an art school for him – F

Question 5.

a. Describe the bird (P.22) in your own words.

Answer:

That bird was a rare bird.

It had a long tail and a black crest.

It had restless energy.

Its eyes were kept moving here and there. Its whole body was ready to fly at any moment. It was a very beautiful bird, and attractive also.

b. Now write a small paragraph on any bird/animal that you have watched.

Answer:

Self-assessment.

Once, I went to the zoo and got the opportunity to watch the peacock. The two peacocks are moving here and there. They were very beautiful. I observed the big peacock, its eyes were small. It has blue-green colored plumage. Its tail is not the ordinary tail. Its tail is full of quill feathers and it had the highly elongated upper tail. The eyes were best seen when it fans its tail. It danced. All were attracted to see the Peacock.

Question 6.

Do you think the school you are studying should admit students with disabilities of hearing? Give reasons.

Answer:

Question 7.

Read the text again. Note down the important events in them. Show them in the flowchart.

Answer:

Enrich Your Vocabulary:

Task – 1: Fill in the blanks with appropriate words selecting from the words given in brackets.

Ganesh was fond of riding a bicycle. One day he rode it so fast that he lost control, and hit against an electric pole. His left leg fractured and there were scratches all over the body. He was badly ____. His mother, who was near, ran up to him. Fortunately, he was not hurt much. She tried to console him with ____ words. Some boys who were near ____ him. The teacher who happened to pass by told them it was ____ that they should laugh, instead of helping the boy. Ganesh was all right, but his hopes of taking part in the arranged Kabaddi tournament that day were ____.

Answer:

Ganesh was fond of riding a bicycle. One day he rode it so fast that he lost control, and hit against an electric pole. His left leg fractured and there were scratches all over the body. He was badly bruised. His mother, who was near, ran up to him. Fortunately, he was not hurt much. She tried to console him with soothing words. Some boys who were near teased him. The teacher who happened to pass by told them it was unbecoming that they should laugh, instead of helping the boy. Ganesh was all right, but his hopes of taking part in the arranged Kabaddi tournament that day were shattered.

Task -2: You can form the opposite of words by adding un __, in __, dis __, mis __

A list of words is given below write words adding the prefixes. (Refer the dictionary for the right answer.) – Important, well, advantageous, understand, approve, decent

e.g.: Indecent

important

well

advantageous

understand

approve

decent

Answer:

important x unimportant

well x unwell

advantageous x disadvantageous

understand x misunderstand

approve x disapprove

decent x indecent

Task – 3: Complete the following using appropriate words from the text. You will find from the clue which paragraph of the text has that word.

(Note that you have to change the form of the word in some cases)

e.g.: Manoj, a poor boy, works hard in an Auto garage. But what he earns is a __ not enough even for a meal a day (p26) – answer:

pittance

a) Look at that old man. He can __ hear (P5)

Answer:

Look at that old man. He can barely hear.

b) My friend met with an accident

yesterday. He was admitted to the hospital with many ____ (P8)

Answer:

My friend met with an accident yesterday. He was admitted to the hospital with many bruises (injuries).

c) I saw a person near the bus stop yesterday. He was about to hit him. ‘ I screamed, but he couldn’t hear. He had lost the power of hearing he was ____ (P 14)

Answer:

I saw a person near the bus stop yesterday. He was about to hit him. I screamed, but he couldn’t hear. He had lost the power of hearing. He was deaf.

d) The survivors in an earthquake had lost everything. They felt ____ (P18)

Answer:

The survivors in an earthquake had lost everything. They felt shattered.

Listen And Comprehend

Task 1:

Once there was a man who was blind. He wished to see the whole world with his own eyes. One day his friends took him to Jesus. They said to Jesus, “Lord, this is our friend and he is blind. Please enable him to see. ” Jesus took the blind man to a quiet place away from the crowd and gently touched his eyes. Jesus asked him, “Can you see now? ” But he could only see a few movements. Jesus gently touched his eyes again. Now he could see everything. Flowers, birds, trees, people, and all. He shouted in happiness, “Lord, I can see, I can see!” He knelt down before Jesus and thanked him heartily.

Listen to the teacher carefully and answer the questions that are given at the end.

Question 1.

Who took the blind man to Jesus? What did they request Jesus?

Answer:

His friends took him to Jesus. They/’ requested to make him see again.

Question 2.

“Can you see now?” Who asked this? Could he see?

Answer:

Jesus asked him. He could see only a few movements.

Question 3.

Why did Jesus touch the blind man's eyes again?

Answer:

Jesus touched the blind man's eyes again so that the man could see everything.

Question 4.

What did the man see after Jesus touched his eyes again?

Answer:

The man sees everything after Jesus touched his eyes again.

Question 5.

How did the man thank Jesus?

Answer:

The man knelt before Jesus and thanked him heartily.

Speak Well

Task – 1: Govind and his friend are on a visit to MEGA hospital. They want to get some information from the hospital staff Some hints are given for you to help They were home after their visit to the hospital Describe the experience at the hospital to your brother.

[Elder brother: Govind, Younger brother: Hari]

Hari: Anna, you visited the MEGA hospital yesterday. Will you share your experience with me?

Govind: Ok Putta, with pleasure.

Hari: How do visitors/Patients get the primary information at the hospitals?

Govind: There is a reception counter, and the receptionist guides the visitors.

Hari: How are the patients taken to the ICU or Wards?

Govind: They are taken to the ICU or wards on wheelchairs or stretchers.

Now continue and complete the conversation.

Hari: How should we take care if somebody fell on the ground before bringing them to the hospital?

Govind: We should take care of them and do the proper First Aid to them.

Hari: If the person had multi-fracture or other serious problems what did the doctor do?

Govind: In that case, the doctor would do the operation in the operation theatre.

Hari: After the operation, could they send the patient home?

Govind: No, the patient should be shifted towards.

Hari: Thank you, brother. I learned much from you.

Read And Respond

Task – 1: Read the passage given below and answer the questions at the end.

The first baby bomb was dropped on the densely populated industrial town of Hiroshima in Japan on 6th August 1945. The city of Hiroshima was flattened. At least 78,000 people and possibly many thousands more, were killed or fatally injured. As great a number were injured and all their dwellings were damaged or destroyed. The city's military garrison was wiped out. Only a handful of doctors remained alive, and most hospitals and medical supplies were destroyed. Citizens of neighboring towns described the burned, living and dead as no longer recognizably human, with their flesh raw and blackened, their hair is gone and the features melted on their faces. It was the most shocking sight man had ever witnessed.

Question 1.

The passage is about a __ (Fill in the blanks)

Answer:

great disaster of Hiroshima.

Question 2.

Where did the incident take place?

Answer:

The incident took place at Hiroshima in Japan.

Question 3.

How do you say that the bomb blast resulted in a great disaster?

Answer:

Citizens of neighboring towns described that everything was burnt. The burnt things (man or animal) were not at all recognizable. This says that the bomb blast resulted in a great disaster.

Question 4.

What had happened to the military garrison?

Answer:

The city's military garrison was wiped out.

Question 5.

The survivors couldn't be given medical help-Why do you think so?

Answer:

The survivors couldn't be given medical help because only a handful of doctors were re-mained alive and most of the medicines were destroyed.

Question 6.

What tells you that the condition of the bomb affected people was horrible?

Answer:

The people of neighboring towns de-scribed the burned, living and dead as no longer recognizably human, with their raw and blackened, their hair gone and the features melted on their faces. It was was a shocking sight.

Question 7.

What is your feeling as you read the last few lines of the passage?

Answer:

Really the bomb blasting was very cruel and inhuman. Whatever may be the reason, killing and destroying was a crime and uncivilized.

Learn Grammar Through Communication

Task – 1: The following is the schedule of the Chief Minister of Karnataka.

The Chief Minister of Karnataka is leaving (be + leave) for Delhi, this evening by a special plane. He will be arriving (arrive) in Delhi at 8 p.m He is going to meet (be + go + meet) the MPs of Karnataka soon after his arrival. He will be discussing (will+discuss) some important issues with the Prime Minister, tomorrow morning. He will meet (be+meet) party high command by tomorrow evening. He will come back (be + come back) to Bangalore by the evening flight.

Task – 2:

My sister's marriage is arranged (be+arrange) to take place on 21 st May. We are going to get (be+go+to get) the invitation printed by the second week of this month. My parents will visit (will+visit) the relatives by 5th of May. All of us will be going (will+be+go)to Bengaluru next week to buy some clothes and jewelry.

Task – 3: Complete the dialogue using the right form of the verbs given in brackets.

Ganesh: Hi, Gopal when will be your annual day celebrations?

Gopal: We will have it on the 3rd of January.

Ganesh: Who is the Chief Guest?

Gopal: The local MLA is the Chief Guest.

Ganesh: Perhaps you are busy with the cultural activities, aren't you? ,

Gopal: Yes, I under

Ganesh: Is it a day function?

Gopal: you're right. It is a day time function.

Note: How different forms of 'be' are used.

Make reference – Newspaper

Task – 1: Imagine you are the editor of a newspaper, pages of which follow the given arrangement as above. Now read the following captions of the newspaper carefully. In which page/s are you going to insert the following captions?

Colours of Silence Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Question 1.

Colour of silence is the lesson adopted from ___

- a. Biography**
- b. Extract**
- c. National Book Trust of India**
- d. Epic**

Answer:

- c. National Book Trust of India**

Question 2.

Color of Silence is the real story of ___

- a. Satish Gujral**
- b. Inder Gujral**
- c. Avtar Narain**
- d. Architect**

Answer:

- a. Satish Gujral**

Question 3.

Satish's friend name was ___

- a. Raju
- b. Inder
- c. Surrender
- d. Narain

Answer:

- c. Surrender

Question 4.

Satish spent his holiday in ___

- a. Gujarat
- b. Kashmir
- c. Bangalore
- d. West Bengal

Answer:

- b. Kashmir

Question 5.

Satish suffered frequently and had infection especially of the ___

- a. leg
- b. head
- c. body
- d. ear

Answer:

- d. ear

Question 6.

When the accident occurred, Satish was ____ old boy.

- a. 8 years
- b. 10 years

c. 9 years

d. 11 years

Answer:

a. 8 years

Question 7.

Avtar Narain said that “We will have to look for a ___

a. new home

b. new school

c. new doctor

d. new friend

Answer:

b. new school

Question 8.

‘The life of Garibaldi’ translated into Urdu by ___

a. Munshi Premchand

b. Urdu

c. Lala Lajpat Rai

d. Avtar Narain

Answer:

c. Lala Lajpat Rai

Question 9.

His brother ___ sat for hours with him and talked to him

a. Inder

b. Chander

c. Sarat

d. Narain

Answer:

a. Inder

Question 10.

My son is not dumb, Sir! Said by

- a. Master**
- b. Head Master**
- c. Avtar Narain**
- d. Inder**

Answer:

- c. Avtar Narain**

Question 11.

One day Satish was looking ____in to the far corner of the garden

- a.readly**
- b. happily**
- c. casually**
- d. gloomily**

Answer:

- d. gloomily**

Question 12.

The bird had ____ tail

- a. short**
- b. longish**
- c. white**
- d. black**

Answer:

- b. longish**

Question 13.

Bird's eyes kept ____ here and there.

- a. closing**
- b. opening**

c. darting

d. watching

Answer:

c. darting

Question 14.

He began filling pages and pages with ____

a. doodles

b. strokes

c. pictures

d. painting

Answer:

a. doodles

Question 15.

He had always been good at Urdu ____

a. writing

b. reading

c. calligraphy

d. speaking

Answer:

c. calligraphy

Question 16.

According to Satish's father, painting is a ____ pastime.

a. open

b. idle

c. ideal

d. imaginary

Answer:

b. idle

Question 17.

Satish's strokes varied with his ____

- a. memory
- b. writing
- c. friends
- d. mood

Answer:

- d. mood

Question 18.

Satish sketched the bird from memory with a few ____

- a. deft strokes
- b. colours
- c. lines
- d. pattern

Answer:

- a. deft strokes

Question 19.

Artists make a ____ and live in poverty

- a. earnings
- b. pittance
- c. plan
- d. task

Answer:

- b. pittance

Question 20.

According to Avtar Narain, we must always be ____

- a. optimistic
- b. pessimistic

c. patient

d. peaceful

Answer:

a. optimistic

Question 21.

The only ___ for Satish was painting

a. duty

b. work

c. solace

d. hope

Answer:

c. solace

Question 22.

Satish Gujral is accomplished in several art forms like painting, sculpture and ___

a. writing

b. colouring

c. building

d. architecture

Answer:

d. architecture

Question 23.

Satish Gujral has published ___ books of his works

a. 4

b. 8

c. 6

d. 10

Answer:

a. 4

Question 24.

Satish Gujral was honored with the ___

- a. Padma Vibhushan
- b. Padma Bhushan
- c. Bharatha Ratna
- d. Doctrate

Answer:

- a. Padma Vibhushan

II. Match the following:

P.

Answer:

1 – d

2 – e

3 – f

4 – a

5 – b

6 – c

Q.

Answer:

1 – d

2 – e

3 – a

4 – b

5 – c

6 – f

R.

Answer:

1 – b

2 – f

3 – a

4 – e

5 – c

6 – d

S.

Answer:

1 – c

2 – e

3 – a

4 – b

5 – d

T.

S.noAB1.stack of booksa. read carefully2.accomplishb. freedom fighters3.Leafed through the bookc. a great novelist4.Garibaldi and Lala Lajpat Raid. achieve5.MunshiPremchande. Padma Vibhushan6.Satish Gujral had been honouredf. pile of books

Answer:

1 – f

2 – d

3 – a

4 – b

5 – c

6 – e

III. Give one word for the following:

Question 1.

A dangerous part of a river which flows very fast because it is steep and sometimes narrow.

Answer:

rapids

Question 2.

twisting circular movement.

Answer:

swirling

Question 3.

remarks intended to hurt somebody's feelings.

Answer:

taunts

Question 4.

tender, responsive mind.

Answer:

sensitive mind

Question 5.

skillful strokes of an artist.

Answer:

deft strokes

Question 6.

with nothing bright or cheerful.

Answer:

gloomily

Question 7.

to draw pictures or patterns while thinking about something else.

Answer:

doodles

Question 8.

Something that one enjoys doing during leisure time.

Answer:

pastime

Question 9.

The art of producing beautiful writing.

Answer:

calligraphy

Question 10.

low or insufficient payment.

Answer:

pittance

Question 11.

honor awarded by the highest

Answer:

order of the crown

Question 12.

An award is given to outstanding performance in different Held of activities.

Answer:

Padma Bhushan

Question 13.

Art of making figures in stone, wood, metal, etc.,

Answer:

sculptor

Question 14.

The designer of the buildings.

Answer:

architect

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

What made Surrender uneasy when he visited Satish?

Answer:

Satish asked Surender why he was speaking softly when Surender wasn't really speaking softly. So Surender was troubled and he wondered whether Satish had lost his hearing power.

Question 2.

Books opened out a whole world for Satish. How? What was the effect of the books on Satish?

OR

What effect did the books he read have on Satish?

Answer:

Satish's father opened out a whole world for him by giving him an armful of books. He became a voracious reader. The books were all serious works meant for adults. They made him feel depressed and left a deep impression upon his sensitive mind. He came to know of another world through them, a world of suffering and anguish. He began to brood about why there was so much suffering in the world while his own world looked comfortable in comparison.

Question 3.

Why was Satish's father against drawing?

Answer:

Satish's father felt that artists do not make much money. He wanted a bright future for his son. He thought that it is possible only by studying hard. He considered drawing a waste of time.

Question 4.

How did the beautiful bird inspire Satish?

Answer:

First of all, the bird was unusual. It was unlike any other bird that Satish had seen. Moreover, it had some restless energy which made it dart from one place to another, all the time ready for flight. It inspired Satish to draw and paint.

Answer the following questions in 5-6 / 8-10 sentences each:

Question 1.

How did a holiday turn out to be a horror day for Satish?

Answer:

When Satish had gone to Kashmir with his father and brother on holiday, they went hiking. When they were crossing a rickety bridge, Satish lost his balance and fell into the rapids. When he regained his consciousness, he realised that his leg had a fracture. But the real nightmare started after that because his legs remained weak and needed several operations and he started having bouts of headache and started losing his hearing power.

Question 2.

“Satish Gujral became a great artist”. Support this statement mentioning a few of his achievements.

Answer:

Satish Gujral is among the foremost artists of India. He is one of the few artists who is accomplished in several art forms like painting, sculpture and architecture. Exhibitions of his works have been held all over the world and displayed in prestigious museums like the Museum of Modern Art, New York, the Hiroshima Collection, Washington, and the National Gallery of Modern Art, New Delhi. He has also published four books of his works in the various arts. He was awarded the Order of the Crown for the best architectural design of the 20th century for his design of the Belgian Embassy in New Delhi. He has also been honoured with the Padma Vibhushan.

Question 3.

How can you say that Satish Gujral became popular all over the world?

Answer:

Satish Gujral is among the foremost artists of India. Exhibitions of his works have been held all over the world. His paintings are displayed in prestigious museums like the Museum of Modern Art, New York, the Hiroshima Collection, Washington and the National Gallery of Modern Art, New Delhi. In addition, he has won the Order of the Crown for the best architectural design of the 20th century and the Padma Vibhushan. All these details show his popularity not only in India but also all over the world.

Question 7.

Narrate the circumstances that compelled Satish to stay at home.

Answer:

When Satish had gone to Kashmir with his father and brother on holiday, they went hiking. When they were crossing a rickety bridge, Satish lost his balance and fell into the rapids. When he regained his consciousness, he realised that his leg had a fracture. But the real nightmare began when he started having bouts of headache and started losing his hearing power. Due to frequent absence and hearing problem, the school he was attending informed his father that they could not keep Satish. Other schools too refused admission. Hence Satish was compelled to stay at home.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

“This is a school for normal boys. Why don’t you take your son to the school for deaf and dumb children?”

- a) Who does ‘your son’ refer to?**
- b) What couldn’t he be admitted to the school for normal boys?**
- c) Why did the speaker ask the son to be taken to a deaf and dumb school?**

Answer:

- a) "Your son" refers to Satish Gujral.
- b) Satish had met with an accident and had gradually lost his hearing power.
- c) Whichever school his father approached, refused to admit Satish because of the hearing impairment. Hence the headmaster of one of the schools suggested that he be admitted to a deaf and dumb school.

Question 2.

"You want to do this very badly, don't you?"

- a) Who is 'you'?
- b) What does he want to do badly?
- c) Which action of Satish changed his father's attitude towards what he wanted to do?

Answer:

- a) The 'you' is Satish.
- b) He wants to draw and paint.
- c) Satish's continued interest in drawing and painting changed the attitude of his father. Once while Satish was mixing the paints, his father watched him intently. Satish continued with his action even though he knew that his father, who disapproved of him drawing, was watching him. This must have made his father realize that Satish was deeply involved with drawing and painting.

Question 3.

"We will have to look for a new school", his father said.

- a) Why did Satish's father have to look for a new school?
- b) Satish was unhappy about this. What was the reason?

Answer:

- a) Due to his frequent absence and his hearing problem, the school Satish was attending informed his father that they could not keep him. So, Satish's father had to look for a new school.
- b) Satish did not want to go to a school where he couldn't talk to other children and where they would make fun of his deafness.

Question 4.

"This is an idle pastime. You would do better to read and get some knowledge".

- a) What is an idle pastime, according to the speaker?
- b) What did the speaker want the listener to do?
- c) Why does Satish's father give more importance to reading?

Answer:

- a) The speaker considers drawing an idle pastime.
- b) The speaker wanted the listener to read books and gain knowledge.
- c) Satish's father thinks that by reading, Satish can get on in life. One can learn a lot of things by reading.

Colors of Silence Summary in English

The lesson is the extract of the childhood days of the famous foremost artists of India. This lesson is studied under the unit – Enabling the disabled. The readers get encouragement from the hero of the lesson, i.e., Satish Gujral. This is the real incident that happened. The present prose proves that physical disability is no barrier to success. Satish was eight years old, he didn't attend the school one day. His friend Surrender came to visit him and asked the reason for his absence.

Poor Satish was lying on the bed, he couldn't hear though Surrender called him three times. After that Satish replied that he was not feeling well. Surrender with more concerned asked again what was the reason for his illness. Satish didn't know the reason said that he had terrible headaches and felt everything is going dark and silent. He questioned Surrender why did he speak so softly. Surrender had a strange look and wondered himself that Satish might lose his hearing.

Previous year Satish went to Kashmir with his brother and father during holidays. There he met with an accident. When he went walking with his father and brother, they wanted to cross a bridge which was weak. Both stood on the bridge and looked down the swirling water below. Satish pointed out a spot to his brother, just then his foot slipped and losing his balance, he fell into the dangerous part of the river. When he regained his consciousness, his legs were injured. His head also hurt, he was injured and badly hurt all over.

He had several operations and his legs healed but they remained weak. After that, frequently he was ill and had infections in his ears. Satish was suffering from pain. Surrender got up and asked whether he will come to school the next day. Satish shook his head and Surrender left. Satish was suffering and felt that some huge weight was pressing upon his head, making everything seemed far away and silent. He was upset and helpless. A slow tear came down drop by drop on his cheek. He felt the silence was worst as he had been confined to bed. He wanted to scream to break the silence but he couldn't. Everything looked like the scenes from some dramatic show.

This was very terrible for the eight-year-old boy. According to the doctor, all this was caused by side effects of the medicine given at the time of treatment for his legs. Doctors didn't diagnose the correct cause. Because of his illness, he was irregular to his school and had the hearing problem. So the school authorities couldn't keep Satish in their school. His father decided to look at a new school for him. But Satish didn't want to go to a new school because he was not able to, talk to the new children and had a fear that they would make fun of his deafness. But there was no other way, his father made a lot of effort to convince him, at last, he agreed to join the school.

They had to face the same situation in the new school also. The headmaster said that was the school for normal boys, why didn't they took him to deaf and dumb school? Satish s father Avtar Narain got

angry and said that his son was not dumb. Almost all schools rejected Satish They felt helpless. After this, Satish became very moody. He couldn't talk freely, at this stage he didn't hear a single word.

His elder brother Inder accompanied him, hours together and sat beside him. He talked, taught, and make an effort to learn the pronunciation of the words. Satish did not go to play with his neighbors because he was unable to bear their talents and teasing of other children. He had a very delicate mind, and too sensitive. His father and his brother spent their time with him and taught him many things. His father brought many books to read and said that he can learn a lot of things through the books reading. From that day onwards, he read many books. By reading, a whole world was opened for him. He became a voracious reader. He read The life of Garibaldi, works of Munshi Premchand, Sarat Chandra, and several others. The reading made him feel depressed and left a deep impression upon his sensitive mind. He came to know another world of suffering and trouble while his own world looked comfortable in comparison.

After some days Satish again struck and confined to bed. At this stage, he could sit, look out of the window or read the books. One day he saw a rare bird that was flying here and there. It had a long tail and black crest. It had restless energy and to flight at any moment. He Was attracted by the bird and sketched the bird from his memory. He liked his sketch and kept beside his bed on the pile of books. He had discovered his past time by filling the pages with pictures and patterns of his thinking. He was good at Urdu writing and sketching came naturally.

But his father thought that it was an idle pastime. Instead of this, it was better to read books. Satish was refused to stop drawing though his father opposed it. His mother said to his father that why did he take away his son's source of entertainment. His father's concern was about his future. How can he lead his life as an artist? Artists had very less income and his hearing may return at any time and he had to study to make something out for his life. Mother asked how it possible that he can recover his hearing. He had become ill for 3 years. She lost her hope but his father didn't lose his hope. His father said why should they decide that he is going to remain deaf all his life, instead of what they should be optimistic and gently scolded his wife.

Though they visited doctors several times, his condition was not improving. He remained in his silent world. The only comfort in his life was painting. His father was opposed but he managed to paint and draw. One day his father observed his son's talent and decided to encourage him. He asked his son about his painting, Satish was astonished that his father was not angry with him. After a few hours, father brought paints, brushes, drawing sheets, etc., and carefully set them on his table. Satish came and hugged his father with love. His father said that those things for him. His father found the best school in Arts and his son made his life in his way.

At last Satish's father accepted his son's wish to become an artist. Satish learned more than painting in that school and also learned about life. The boy, now popularly known as Satish Gujral. He was one of the few artists, famous for painting, sculpture, and architecture. He was also a writer. His works were displayed in prestigious museums like the Museum of Modern Art, New York, the Hiroshima collection. Washington and the National Gallery of Modem Art, New Delhi. He had published four books of his works in the various arts. He was awarded the Order of the Crown for the best architectural design of the 20th century for his design of the Belgian Embassy in New Delhi. He was honored with "Padma Vibhushan". He was a good example for the disabled could also achieve the best. Disability was no barrier to success.

THE BLIND BOY

The Blind Boy Poem Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

The Blind Boy Notes Question 1.

Whose is the voice of the poem?

Answer:

The poet as a blind boy is the voice of the poem.

The Blind Boy Poem Questions And Answers Question 2.

'The blessings of the sight' - line 3. Can you list out a few of them?

Answer:

The blessings of the sight are many. Those who have eyesight they can enjoy the blessings of the sight. They can see the whole world, Nature, Sun, Moon, Stars, Mountains, rivers, parents, friends, etc., In other words, we can say that all most all the things they can see.

The Blind Boy By Colley Cibber Question Answers Question 3.

How does a blind person understand whether it is day or night?

Answer:

Whenever the blind person awakes, it is day and when he sleeps it is a night for him. He 'can understand the day and like this.

The Blind Boy Summary Question 4.

Read lines 13 and 14. Who is sympathizing with whom?

Answer:

The reader would sympathize the blind boy. They feel very bad and give heavy sighs and show their sorrow by saying that he was unlucky.

The Blind Boy Poem Question 5.

How does the blind pacify himself? Quote the lines that suggest this.

Answer:

**The blind boy appeased himself, that we can know by the following lines. A loss I never can know
Then let not what I cannot have My cheer of mind destroy and then he feels Whilst thus I sing, I am a
King, Although a poor blind boy.**

Read and appreciate

The Blind Boy Question Answers Question 1.

Who do you think is the person addressed as 'you' in the poem?

Answer:

'You' in the poem could be anyone who has the gift of sight or all of us who have the gift of sight.

The Blind Boy Poem Notes Question 2.

Read the first stanza carefully. The tone of the speaker is one of ____

- a. surprise**
- b. curiosity**
- c. sadness**

(choose the appropriate one)

Answer:

- b. curiosity**

The Blind Boy Question Answer Question 3.

The blind boy can feel ____ of the sun. (fill in the blank)

Answer:

warm

The Blind Boy Poem Pdf Question 4.

What a normal person can easily understand is almost a riddle to the blind boy. What is it?

Answer:

The blessings of the sight are almost a riddle to the blind boy.

Blind Boy Poem Summary Question 5.

Identify the rhyme scheme of the poem.

Answer:

The rhyme scheme of the poem is as follows.

The rhyming words are

light – sight

enjoy – boy

see – he

bright – night

make – awake

play – day

hear – bear

woe – know

destroy – boy

The rhyme scheme of the poem is abab cbcb dede fgfg hihi.

The Blind Boy Poem Summary Question 6.

Match the following and frame appropriate sentence for each phrase thus matched.

Answer:

**blessings of wondrous things
cheers of sight
talk of mind**

Match the following :

- 1. blessings of sight**
- 2. cheers of mind**
- 3. talk of wondrous things**

Summary Of The Blind Boy Question 7.

Read the lines from a poem by D.V.G Does the poem “The Blind Boy ” reflect the same idea? Discuss it in the class.

- 1. We are very lucky to have the blessings of sight.**
- 2. We should feel happy with what we have to cheer our minds.**
- 3. The people are interested to talk about wondrous things.**

Answer:

Yes, ‘The Blind Boy poem also reveals the same gist of D. V.G poem. We don’t think or repent that what we didn’t have. Instead of that, we should feel blessed and happy that what we have. Then we can gain pleasure.

The Blind Boy Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Blind Boy Poem Questions And Answers Question 1.

'The Blind Boy' is the poem written by ___

- a. Robert William
- b. Colley Cibber
- c. William
- d. Shakespeare

Answer:

- b. Colley Cibber

The Blind Boy Questions And Answers Question 2.

The Blind Boy never enjoyed the ___

- a. Warm
- b. Sun shining
- c. Sun
- d. Sun Light

Answer:

- d. Sun Light

Summary Of The Poem The Blind Boy Question 3.

How can the blind boy make it day or ___

- a. light
- b. warm
- c. night
- d. pleasant

Answer:

- c. night

Blind Boy Poem 10th Class Question 4.

Whenever I sleep or ___

- a. awake
- b. play

c. sing

d. dance

Answer:

b. play

The Blind Boy Poem Questions And Answers Class 6 Question 5.

With heavy ____ I often hear

a. sighs

b. rain

c. light

d. dark

Answer:

a. sighs

Blind Boy Poem Notes Question 6.

But sure with ____ I can bear

a. hope

b. joy

c. sorrow

d. patience

Answer:

d. patience

Question 7.

My ____ of mind destroy

a. absence

b. presence

c. cheer

d. sorrow

Answer:

c. cheer

Question 8.

Whilst thus I sing, I am a ____

- a. boy
- b. king
- c. blind boy
- d. poet

Answer:

- b. king

Question 9.

You mourn my ____

- a. helpless
- b. ayaken
- c. big
- d. small

Answer:

- a. helpless

Question 10.

Although a poor __ boy

- a lucky
- b. blind
- c. happy
- d. blessed

Answer:

- b. blind

II Match the following :

Answer:

1 – f

2 – a

3 – e

4 – b

5 – c

6 – d

Answer the following questions in a word or a sentence each:

Question 1.

Who is the speaker and who is he speaking to?

Answer:

The speaker is a blind boy and he is speaking to the readers or to those who have sight.

Question 2.

How can the sun make day or night?

Answer:

The sun makes day or night by rising or setting.

Question 3.

What is the outcome of the blind boy himself making the day or night?

Answer:

The blind boy says that he never has the night and that it is a day for him always.

Question 4.

How does the blind boy know that people are sorry for him?

Answer:

From the heavy sighs made by people.

Question 5.

Who mourns his hapless woe?

Answer:

The one who pities the blind boy, the one who has the gift of sight.

Question 6.

What is the loss the boy bears?

Answer:

The boy bears the loss of his vision.

Question 7.

What is it that the blind boy cannot have?

Answer:

The boy cannot have the gift of sight.

Question 8.

When does the blind boy feel like a king?

Answer:

While he is singing, the blind boy does not feel inferior and feels like a king.

Question 9.

Who do you think is the person addressed as 'you' in the poem?

Answer:

"You" refers to the people.

Question 10.

How do others feel about the blind boy?

Answer:

Others feel sad about the blind boy.

Question 11.

What does the speaker hear with a heavy sigh?

Answer:

The speaker hears with a heavy sigh other people pitying him as he was blind.

Question 12.

Who cannot make day or night for the boy?

Answer:

The sun cannot make the day or night for the boy.

Question 13.

What does the speaker always hear?

Answer:

The speaker always hears the sighs of pity of other people for him.

Question 14.

How does the speaker feel when others say the sun shines brightly?

Answer:

It makes no difference for the blind boy if the sun shines brightly. He can feel the warmth of the sun, but as far as the light of the day is concerned, there is no difference for the blind boy.

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

What is the grievance of the blind boy?

Answer:

The blind boy is denied the gift of sight. He does not know what light is or how wonderful the sun looks.

Question 2.

How do others feel about the blind boy? What is his reaction?

Answer:

People feel sorry for the blind boy and try to show sympathy towards him. The blind boy says that he does not really understand what he is missing. So he does not feel that his life is miserable.

Question 3.

What a normal person can understand is almost a riddle to the blind boy. What is it?

Answer:

We can recognize day and night. The blind boy can feel the warmth of the sun, but doesn't know how the sun can make day and night because when he falls asleep it is night and whenever he is awake it is day for him.

Question 4.

About which things are the speaker aware of?

Answer:

Though the speaker is blind, his other sensory organs are sharp and he can feel what goes on around him. He can feel the warmth of the sun and he even feels the pity of the people around him as he can hear their sighs.

Question 5.

What is the speaker's approach to life?

Answer:

The speaker has a positive approach to life. It is surprising that despite his handicap he does not pity himself, but sings joyously, refusing to be depressed. And while he sings thus, he considers himself a king who is blessed with riches.

Answer the following questions in 6-8 sentences each:

Question 1.

Explain how the boy reacts to his blindness.

Answer:

The boy's reaction to his blindness is a totally unexpected one. Though initially, he expresses his sorrow, he surprises the world by showing that even blindness can be accepted. The poem highlights the spirit of acceptance. Like John Milton, who in his poem 'On His Blindness' initially questions God about his cruelty, but later accepts his blindness as the will of God, the blind boy accepts his blindness as a state which is beyond his area of control. He comes up with the simple conclusion that what cannot be changed should be endured cheerfully.

Question 2.

We should feel happy with what we have and never go after what we cannot get'. How has the poet brought out this message in the poem 'The Blind Boy'?

Answer:

Of all the handicaps, perhaps blindness is the most pitiable. Yet, in the poem 'The Blind Boy', we see the blind boy, without seeking the sympathy of others, talking about his blindness as if it were a gift. The poet's intention here is not to celebrate blindness, but to celebrate the positive mental set-up of people who can overcome their difficulties and emerge victoriously.

By making the boy claim that he can make his own day and night without going by the day order, the poet shows that the choice of overcoming an obstacle lies with every one of us, We need to do this because if we allow our problems to bog down our Spirit, we will invite misery upon ourselves. Life is a precious gift of God and it is important that we make the best use of this rare gift.

Question 3.

Describe the life of the blind boy.

Answer:

Even though the boy was blind, he made it clear he didn't want anyone to feel sorry for him nor was he going to let anything take away his joy. Even though people feel sorry for him, they shouldn't because he has patience and knows no different because he has always been blind; he hasn't lost anything. We shouldn't let things cause us to lose our cheer because things could be worse.

Even though he was blind and had that disadvantage in life, he still thinks of himself as a king. That optimistic attitude and spirit should be an inspiration to all readers of this poem. The point is to be

confident in who you are and don't feel sorry for yourself o-r expect others to. The blind boy thought highly of himself and displayed confidence despite the fact that he was blind.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

O say what is that thing called light, which I must never enjoy.

- a) Why is the boy asking about light?
- b) Whom is he asking?
- c) Why will he never enjoy light?

Answer:

- a) The boy is asking about light because he has never experienced it.
- b) People with eyesight.
- c) The boy is blind. Hence he can never enjoy the light.

Question 2.

Then let not what I cannot have My cheer of mind destroy.

- a) Who is the speaker?
- b) What is it that the blind boy cannot have?
- c) How will the boy's cheer of mind be destroyed?

Answer:

- a) The blind boy.
- b) The blind boy cannot have the gift of sight.
- c) The blind boy's cheer of mind would be destroyed if he sat and contemplated how it would be if he could see. He says that he will not allow, what he does not have, to spoil his cheerfulness.

Question 3.

“And could I ever keep awake With me ‘were always day”.

- a) Who is the speaker here?
- b) What is he trying to convey here?
- c) How would it be always day for him?

Answer:

- a) The blind boy is the speaker here.

b) The blind boy cannot see the difference between day and night. To him it is day when he plays and night when he sleeps.

c) If he did not sleep it would always be a day for him.

The Blind Boy Poem Summary in English

Colley Cibber wrote the poem "The Blind Boy". It is a short poem. The poet here described the feelings of the blind boy. The blind boy never saw the light in his life. How could he enjoy the light that he could not see? He didn't understand the favor or happiness of the light it gave. The blind boy said that the people would say that the Sun shines brightly, but the blind boy didn't know it. He could only feel the warmness of the Sun but not the sun or Sunlight.

The day and night are similar to him, so he said that whenever he sleeps i.e., night and whenever he wakes up i.e., day. The others showed pity and gave heavy sighs that blind boy can hear and asked why should you mourn for him. If you feel that I am unlucky, I don't think so. I could bear this. I don't know what I lost. I don't bother about what I do not have. If I bother about that, I would destroy my pleasure. Forgetting all these I am a king while I sing. If you consider me as a poor blind boy but I feel like a king and happy with what I have.

SCIENCE AND HOPE OF SURVIVAL

Science and Hope of Survival Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

Whether you want to become an expert in English or to get good marks in the exam, you have one and only solution is practicing with Karnataka Class 10 English Chapter wise Solutions. Strengthen your weakness by learning the KSEEB Class 10 English on our site. You can learn directly online on our website or learn off line by downloading Karnataka Class 10 English Chapter wise material. Save your time and read Karnataka Class 10 English Subject at your comfort level.

Question 1.

a. If you are so clever, why are you so poor?

The professional addressed as 'you' in the statement above refers more than others to a ____

(Fill in the blank choosing the best form in the alternative below)

i) scientist

ii) lawyer

iii) doctor

iv) businessman

The professionals addressed as 'you' in the statement is

Answer:

i) Scientist

Question 2.

Read paragraph (1) and (2) carefully, and fill in the blanks in the columns below:

Answer:

Professionals A writer A scientist A lawyer Vocation Writing Experiment

research

arguing. Field of activity Literature discovery Justice Reward Appreciation honor Money

Question 3.

A few words are given below. Some of them are related to the field of business, and some are to the field of science. Maybe a couple of them related to both. Read, discuss and fill them in columns A, B and C accordingly.

Answer:

Wealth, profit and loss, friendship, rational thinking, advertisement, exploring nature, exploitation of nature, discover, commerce, research, playing to popular sentiments, universality.

Field of science Field of business Both rational thinking exploring nature

discovery, research universality

wealth

Profit and loss, advertisement exploitation of nature

Commerce, playing to popular sentiments

friendship

Question 4.

The writer says, "I found myself in Geneva". It expresses, more than anything else, the writer's ____ (Choose the right option and fill in the blank)

i) pleasure

ii) surprise

iii) anxiety

iv) annoyance

Answer:

The writer says “I found myself in Geneva”. It expresses, more than anything else, the writer’s surprise.

Question 5.

A few statements are made below. Read them and say which of them are true or false according to the text Tick Yes / No accordingly.

i) The war was going on between the US and the USSR when the Geneva meeting was called Yes/No

Answer:

No

ii) Everyone lived under the fear of annihilation by nuclear weapons. Yes/No

Answer:

Yes

iii) In the nuclear war; the first who strikes will be the survivor. Yes/No.

Answer:

No

iv) The three superpowers were willing to put a ban on nuclear weapon tests. Yes/No.

Answer:

Yes

Question 6.

Earth tremors are caused by two factors. One is the earthquake. What is the other factor?

Answer:

The other factor is the Nuclear Test.

Question 7.

Which of the following qualities helped the scientists to come up with a solution to the problem?

Which of them did not? Put right (✓) or (×) wrong in the boxes accordingly.

Answer:

self – assessment [✓]

self – praise [×]

popularity [×]

experience [✓]

self – discipline [✓]

respect for evidence [✓]

Question 8.

What was the important decision that the politicians took before Geneva Summit?

Answer:

The important decision that the politicians took before the Geneva summit was “Nuclear Test Ban”.

Question 9.

“Immersion in science does not go with common sense”, suggests ____

- i) foolishness of scientists**
- ii) absent-mindedness of scientists**
- iii) that scientists do not bother about the results of their work**

(Complete the sentence with the right choice)

Answer:

ii) absent-mindedness of scientists.

Question 10.

With whose help can the world be ready with preparedness to face the challenges that the natural calamities pose?

Answer:

With Scientist’s help, the world is ready with preparedness to face the challenges that the natural calamities pose.

Question 11.

Write at least the names of three subjects that come under the category of basic science.

Answer:

The three subjects that come under the category of basic science are Physics, Chemistry, and Mathematics.

Question 12.

Who can best ensure our safety in the world?

Answer:

Scientists with their tools that are up to the challenge and can ensure our safety in the world.

Think About The Text

Question 1.

The pursuit of science is an exciting adventure. Do you agree? Can you compare this with other types of adventure like the pursuit of sports? Share your views with your friends.

Answer:

Yes, the pursuit of science is an exciting adventure. When you take up a scientific venture, you do so without knowing what the outcome is going to be. You can be in for trouble too. However, as in the case of an adventure, in the case of science to the final outcome, if it is what you wanted to achieve, gives you immense joy. However, in the field of science, unlike sports or other adventures, the outcome is directed at the welfare of common people.

Question 2.

Which sentence in the text suggest that the au–thor was involved more in the theoretical research than in its application to the Warcraft?

Answer:

The sentence in the text suggests that the author was in–volved more in the theoretical research than in its application to the Warcraft was in the 3rd para. i.e., “I did not give much thought to how it connects with the real life”.

Question 3.

“A paradox may refer to a person, a thing or a situation that has two opposite features and therefore seems strange”. In light of this definition, how is ‘MAD’ a paradox?

Answer:

The acronym MAD means Mutually Assured Destruction. It’s paradoxical because nations amass nuclear weapons with the argument that it’s for self-defense. But if they use them by any chance it will lead to their destruction because the enemies will use their weapons as well and since the weapons have the capacity to destroy whole nations, the whole world may get annihilated.

Question 4.

What was the ‘problem’ that the nuclear powers had faced? Was it a violation of the agreement or was it the detection of violation? Explain briefly.

Answer:

The problem faced by the nuclear powers was the possibility of breach of trust. Supposing nations sign a treaty banning nuclear explosions, and if one or the other nation breaks the bond, how would the other nations know about it. Thus the problem is both the violation of the agreement and the detection of it.

Question 5.

Why were the technical experts summoned by the three superpowers?

Answer:

The three superpowers had enough nuclear bombs to destroy others. If anyone of them used, it would take only 20 minutes to reach their targets, but other side had plenty of time to reverse action against their enemy. So the three superpowers were willing to come to an agreement to solve the problem. Hence they summoned the technical experts.

Question 6.

In which area did Kellis Brooks theoretical knowledge has a direct application?

Answer:

Keilis-Borok was doing research on the theory of seismic waves – tremors generated by an earthquake. Since underground nuclear explosions produced earth tremors very similar to those generated by earthquakes, it turned out that his knowledge of seismic waves had a direct application in the field of nuclear weapons or underground nuclear explosions.

Question 7.

“Iron Curtain” is referred to as a barrier. It was outwardly difficult for the opposite sides of the iron curtain to find out the solution for the problem of violation of the agreement. What was the reason?

Answer:

Iron curtain was a barrier. It was difficult for the opposite sides to find out the solution. Because of the cold war continued, the political tensions were hanging over. The scientists gave up their differences and worked together irrespective of their nationality.

Question 8.

How are scientists able to work in spite of political and cultural differences?

Answer:

According to the author, scientists should give up their cultural differences and work hard for the benefit of the whole of mankind. Scientists were able to work, based on respect to hard evidence known to be true something and they were skillful.

Question 9.

Make a list of lessons that the writer learned at the Geneva Summit.

Answer:

The following are the important points that the writer had learned from the Geneva Summit as follows:

Asa Scientist, the author had people like him all over the world who could think and interact as the author.

At abroad he need not feel lonely.

Science gives hope of survival and well being for the whole of mankind.

Question 10.

Give a few examples which illustrate the writer's stand that scientists are the most practical people in the world.

Answer:

The writer places before the readers a number of examples from technology, industry, defence and entertainment to show that the scientists are the most practical people in the world. He says that all new technologies, all new brands of industry from defence to entertainment stem from fundamental research. Antibiotics, electronics, biotechnology, synthetic fibres, the green revolution, and genetic forensic diagnosis are all taken by the writer as examples of scientists being practical.

Question 11.

Who will be headhunted by financial institutions and pharmaceutical industries? Why?

Answer:

The people who trained in theoretical physics are headhunted by financial institutions. Those who trained in frontiers of biological research become founders and directors in the pharmaceutical industry.

Question 12.

Some statements are given below. Why or why not are they true?

- a) Money is more powerful than intellectual resources.**
- b) Intellectual resources help the survival of mankind.**
- c) Basic research is a way of stalling disasters.**

Answer:

- a) Money is more important than intellectual resources – False**

There is no assurance that money can buy everything. In fact many problems are created by money. But intellectual resources, of which science is the most significant, can improve the quality of life.

- b) Intellectual resources help the survival of mankind – True**

It is because of the intellectual resources that we have combated many diseases. Though man is not the fittest among all the creations of God, he is able to ensure his safety against the other powerful creatures of nature because of his intellectual resources. Basic research can help our survival by giving us new sources of energy and new mineral deposits. Basic research can also protect us against terrorism.

c) Basic research is a way of stalling disasters – True

Meteorologists study the ecological changes and forewarn people about natural disasters like earthquakes, tsunamis, storms etc. People can be evacuated from the area posed with danger.

Question 13.

Imagine that you and some of your classmates have been selected to represent India in a meeting of scientists to be held in Russia to discuss the nuclear test. How would you all prepare for the meeting? Discuss among yourselves and write a paragraph about your proposed argument in the meeting.

Answer:

self-assessment.

Enrich Your Vocabulary:

Task – 2: Following the example given above, fill in the blanks with correct collocations (an appropriate combination of words) choosing from those given.

The Government sanctioned a few crores of rupees to build a stadium in our town. The builders made rapid progress with the stadium. While the work was in progress, unfortunately, a boulder rolled down on a worker and he was injured. Immediately, he was rushed to a nearby hospital. I wished him a speedy recovery. The Government took swift action against the builders. The builders made prompt payment of the bills of the hospital

(a speedy recovery, a prompt payment, a swift action, rapid progress)

Task – 3: Champaka is in Goa. She writes a letter to her friend, Suma. She consciously uses collocations leaving options for Suma to choose right collocations. How would Suma use them?

Hi Suma

Weather's fantastic here. We make/walk/take a stroll along the beach every morning. My grandpa made/got/acquainted friends with some foreigners here yesterday.

He changed/exchanged/passed some interesting ideas with them. I happened to read an article on climate change in one of the local newspapers. It was excellent and said that rising/raising/going sea levels are the menacing/disturbing/changing actors for the ecological balance. They are causing irreparable/inseparable/acute damage to the environment. I will be back in Bengaluru next week and we can discuss more these things. Take care.

Bye,

Champaka.

Hi Suma

Weather's fantastic here. We take a stroll along the beach every morning. My grandpa made friends with some foreigners here yesterday. He exchanged some interesting ideas with them. I happened to read an article on climate change in one of the local news papers. It was excellent and said that rising sea levels are due to changing factors for ecological balance. They are causing acute damage to the environment. I will be back in Bengaluru next week and we can discuss more these things. Take care

Bye,

Champaka.

Task – 4: Match the words in the box on the left with the words that they collocate with on the right. Note some words are shown in the box A may collocate with more than one word in box B. After matching, frame appropriate sentences. You may follow the given examples.

1. Sunder's joke drew hilarious laughter from the audience.
2. Amit raised certain doubts about the decisions of the meeting.
3. Madhu committed the crime yesterday.
4. Ranga laid the carpets parallel to the dais in the hall.
5. The Joker made many gestures of goodwill in the show.
6. The two boys combated with little violence.
7. The children raised their doubts and asked with the neighbors.
8. We draw money from the bank whenever necessary.
9. Make up our mind to put emphasis on good habits.

Listen And Comprehend

On 18 May 1974, India exploded its first nuclear device code-named Operation Smiling Buddha. After about a quarter-century on 11 May 1998, Operation Shakti was carried out. Shakti was the code name of the thermonuclear device that was exploded in Pokhran as part of Pokhran II. Pokhran served as a test site. A total of five nuclear devices were detonated during Operation Shakti. Measurements confirmed that there was no release of radioactivity.

Task 1: The teacher reads the passage. Listen to the teacher carefully and fill in the table as the teacher reads the passage.

Code name of first nuclear device : Operation Smiling Buddha 18th May 1974 Shakti

Date of explosion : 18th May 1974

Code name of Pokhran II : Shakti

Test site : Pokhran

Number of nuclear weapons detonated : 5

Type of device : Thermonuclear

Speak well

Task – 2 : You can write a dialogue persuading your friend to accompany you on a trip to a hill station in Karnataka. You can make use of the following phrases.

You ought to ____

You'd better ____

I would urge you to ____

Shouldn't you ____

Dialogues

Rama: Hi Krishna.

Krishna: Hi Rama, How are you?

Rama: I am fine. We are planned to go to Mullayanagiri hill station, you ought to come.

Krishna: When will it be?

Rama: Next Sunday

Krishna: O.K. I will see?

Rama: No, No. I urge you to accompany us.

Krishna: You'd better choose to call Govind I have some work on that day.

Rama: That I don't know. You should come, Shouldn't you?

Krishna: O.K. I will accompany you. Bye...

Rama: Bye... Bye...

Read And Respond

Task -1: Read the given story. The bits of the story are jumbled, you can arrange them in the right order to complete the story. You can also give a suitable title to it.

1. "Your candle has burned out, brother," replied the stranger.
2. "I do not need a lantern," he said. "Darkness or light is all the same to me".
3. The blind man started off with the lantern and before he had walked far, someone ran into him. "Look out where you are going" he exclaimed to the stranger, "can't you see the lantern"?
4. In early times in Japan, bamboo and paper lanterns were made with candles inside. A blind man, visiting a friend one night, was offered a lantern to carry home with him.

5. "I know you do not need a lantern to find your way," his friend replied. "But if you don't have one, someone else may run into you. So, you must take it."

The Suitable title for this story is

The Blind Man

1. In early times in Japan, bamboo and paper lanterns were made with candles inside. A blind man, visiting a friend one night,

was offered a lantern to carry home with him

2. "I do not need a lantern", he said. "Darkness or light is all the same to me".

3. "I know you do not need a lantern to find your way", his friend replied... "But if you don't have one, someone else may run into you. So, you must take it".

4. The blind man started off with the lantern and before he had walked far, someone ran into him. "Look out where you are going!" he exclaimed to the stranger. "Can't you see the lantern?".

5. "Your candle has burned out, brother", replied the stranger.

Task – 2: Edit and rewrite the following article written by your friend for the school magazine on "Rockets".

Rockets carry satellites and people into space, a rocket burn fuel produce a jet of gas. The hot gas expands and is blast downwards causing a force to push the rocket up. The first liquid-fueled rocket is launched in 1926.it reached 12.5 M. The flight lasted 2.5 seconds. There many kinds of rockets. Today rocket such Arienne 5is used to send satellites. It's size determine whether it is sent up by a small or large rocket.

Rockets carry satellites and people into space. A rocket bums fuel produces a Jet of gas. The hot gas expands and is blast downwards causing a force to push the rocket up. The first liquid-fueled rocket was launched in 1926. It reached 12.5 M. The flight lasted 2.5 seconds. There are many kinds of rockets. Today rockets such as Arienne 5 is used to send satellites. Its size determines whether it is sent up by a small or large rocket.

Learn grammar through communication

Task – 2: Read the conversation between two business partners and complete the passage by choosing the appropriate word/ words given below.

Jane: Good morning, Robert.

Robert: Very good morning, Jane.

Jane: Let's not waste our time. Shall we begin?

Robert: Sure. I'm rather glad you raised the subject.

Jane and Robert exchanged pleasantries. Jane was eager to get straight into the business. She asked him . Robert accepted and ___ that ___ glad as she ___ the

subject

told her

had raised

if they should begin their talks

he was

Jane and Robert exchanged pleasantries.

Jane was eager to get into the business. She asked him if they should begin their talks. Robert accepted and told her that he was glad as she had raised the subject.

Task – 3 : Read what happened in a camera shop between the owner, Henry and a customer, Arathi. Complete the paragraph

that follows using the given choices appropriately.

Henry: Here's a nice camera.

Arathi: oh, it's beautiful!

Henry: That's a little expensive.

Arathi: How much is it?

Henry: It's 175 dollars.

Arathi: I think this one will be fine.

Henry showed Arathi a nice camera. She ___ it was beautiful. Henry ___ the camera was a bit costly. Later,

she ___ about its price to which he ___ 175 dollars. Finally, Arathi decided to buy it.

- a. remarked that
- b. wanted to know
- c. replied that it was
- d. admired it saying that

Henry showed Arathi a nice camera. She admired it saying that it was beautiful. Henry replied that the camera was a bit costly. Later, she wanted to know about its price to which he remarked 175 dollars. Finally, Arathi decided to buy it.

Task – 4: Read the conversation between two old school friends and write it in a paragraph in the reported form.

Chandan: I met Rani last week in Mysore.

Raghu: Oh. Does she look the same?

Chandan: There is a little bit of change in her appearance. But, She remains the same.

Raghu: What's She doing now?

Chandan: She works for a private company.

Begin with

Chandan told Raghu ____

Chaiidan told Raghu that he met Rani last week in Mysore. Raghu asked that she was looked the same as before. Chandan replied that there were some little bit of changes in her appearance but she remained as before. Raghu enquired what was she doing! Chandan said that she was working in a private company.

Make Reference

Task-2:

- i. Information on nuclear weapons – Encyclopedia.**
- ii Pronunciation of the word “exemplification” – Dictionary.**
- iii. Synonym of the word, “natural’ – Thesaurus.**
- iv. The place where first nuclear bombs exploded – Encyclopedia.**
- v. Variations of the word “inspire” – Dictionary.**
- vi. To know the spellings of the word, “approximately” – Dictionary.**
- vii To collect the information about the things that the scientists need for their research – Encyclopedia**
- viii. To find out the phrase that means, “to continue” – Thesaurus.**

Science and Hope of Survival Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Question 1.

Science and Hope of Survival is the prose written by ____

a. Kellis Borok

b. Willian

c. Satish Gujral

d. Wordsworth

Question 2.

Leo Tolstoy was a ____ writer

a. Indian

b. Russian

c. American

d. English

Question 3.

‘War and Peace’ was a novel written by ____

a. Kellis Borok

b. Gandhiji

c. Premchand

d. Leo Tolstoy

Question 4.

It was 1960, the height of the ____

a. war

b. battle

c. cold ward

d. combatment

Question 5.

If you are so clever, why are you so poor? Was ____ expression

a. General

b. Special

c. Popular

d. Poitical

Question 6.

Science is a ___ adventure.

- a. ideal
- b. exciting
- c. interesting
- d. open

Question 7.

The author of the lesson doing his research on the theory of ___

- a. Science
- b. War
- c. Mysteries
- d. Seismic Waves

Question 8.

The ___ came from the President of the Russian Academy of Sciences.

- a. Call
- b. Summons
- c. News
- d. Invitation

Question 9.

The technical experts from the Soviet Union ___ and the United Kingdom

- a. India
- b. Russia
- c. United States
- d. Geneva

Question 10.

At that time, every man lived under the threat of ____

- a. armihilatioria
- b. war

c. cold war

d. Earthquake

Question 11

___ strikes ensuring the destruction of their enemies only a few minutes later.

a. Threat

b. Iron Curtain

c. Retaliation

d. Fatal Fate

Question 12.

“MAD” means

a. Muting Against Destruction

b. Mutual Advise Done

c. Members Against Deed

d. Mutually Assured Destruction

Question 13.

The problem is”: how can the other powers detect the ___

a crime

b. fetal fete

c. violation

d. tremors

Question 14.

What saved us was a clear and obvious ___

a distinction

b. record

c. fete

d. research

Question 15.

One of the most important decisions of their times ___

- a. Nuclear Bomb
- b. Nuclear Test Ban
- c. Nuclear Weapon
- d. Nuclear research

Question 16.

While there is ___ there is the hope of Survival and well – being for all of us

- a. Support
- b. Cooperation
- c. Science
- d. hope

Question 17.

___ the most practical people in the world

- a. Politicians
- b. Scientists
- c. Doctors
- d. Engineers

Question 18.

People trained in theoretical physics are ___ by financial institutions

- a. supported
- b. serviced
- c. headhunted
- d. appointed

Question 19.

One of the man-made disasters are ___ destruction of megacities

- a. Nuclear Bomb
- b. Self- inflicted
- c. Bombs
- d. Cold – war

Question 20.

The hope and the responsibility for breaking the __ rest not only on the money, but on intellectual resources

- a. agreement
- b. oath
- c. stalemate
- d. order

Question 21.

Nobody is satisfied with his wealth, everybody is satisfied with his ____

- a. work
- b. status
- c. wisdom
- d. power

Question 22.

“Ours is the time of contest over issues not completely understood” by

- a. scientists
- b. Me George Bundy
- c. F. Press
- d. Kellis Borok

Question 23.

Scientific research is a ____ venture

- a. exciting
- b. interesting
- c. engineering
- d. important

Question 24.

Only the basic research can create a ____ for developing new disaster prepared! less industry

- a. challenge

b. problem

c. solution

d. springboard

Question 25.

Science is their ___ guardian and caretaker

a. responsible

b. real

c. indispensable

d. ideal

II. Match the following :

Ans:

1 – e

2 – c

3 – a

4 – f

5 – b

6 – d

III. Give one word or Name it

Question 1.

Russian writer, author of the novel ‘War and Peace’.

Answer:

Leo Tolstoy

Question 2.

A feeling of friendship when people work together.

Answer:

Camaraderie

Question 3.

A move to a more important position.

Answer:

Promotion

Question 4.

A great effect on you that you feel very happy.

Answer:

Overwhelming

Question 5.

One of the best educators on human nature.

Answer:

F. Press

Question 6.

Unfriendly relationship between the US and the Soviet Union after the Second World war.

Answer:

The Cold War

Question 7.

Something that people do not know anything about it.

Answer:

Mystery

Question 8.

Complete destruction.

Answer:

Annihilation

Question 9.

Action against someone who has done something bad to you.

Answer:

Retaliation

Question 10.

Making you feel that something bad is going to happen.

Answer:

Ominous

Question 11.

A word made from the first letters of the name of any organization, e.g. MAD

Answer:

Acronym

Question 12.

A state that continues to live or exist.

Answer:

Survival

Question 13.

The name for the socio-political border that was believed to exist between Western Europe and the communist countries of central and Eastern Europe.

Answer:

Iron Curtain

Question 14.

Continuing to exist or happen.

Answer:

Persistent

Question 15.

The act of Judging one's own behavior or character.

Answer:

Self-Criticism

Question 16.

The knowledge or information about a subject.

Answer:

Lore

Question 17.

Being absorbed in an activity.

Answer:

Immersion

Question 18.

The most basic or important parts of something.

Answer:

Fundamental

Question 19.

Of the scientific method of finding out about the crime.

Answer:

Forensic

Question 20.

An act to find people with the right skills – or experience for a particular job.

Answer:

Headhunt

Question 21.

To cause pain or problem for oneself.

Answer:

Self – inflict

Question 22.

To make something happen very quickly.

Answer:

Trigger

Question 23.

The number equal to one lakh crores.

Answer:

Trillion

Question 24.

A situation in which it seems impossible to come to an agreement or disagreement.

Answer:

Stalemate

Question 25.

Something that helps one to start doing something.

Answer:

Springboard

Question 26.

A new activity that involves risk.

Answer:

Venture

Question 27.

Very useful and necessary

Answer:

Indispensable

Question 28.

He was United States National Security Advisor to Presidents John F. Kennedy and Lyndon Johnson.

Answer:

Me. George Bundy

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

In addition to war, what other man-made disasters are cited by the author?

Answer:

A massive release of radioactivity from nuclear waste disposal and an outburst of mass violence are cited by the author as man-made disasters.

Question 2.

What did the writer learn from his experience in Geneva?

Answer:

The episode at Geneva taught the writer that as a scientist he had people all over the world who thought and interacted the way he did. It taught him never to feel lonely abroad. And, above all, it taught him that while there is science, there is hope of survival and well-being for all of us.

Question 3.

How did the threat of mutually assured destruction protect the world?

Answer:

At the height of the cold war, every superpower had more than enough nuclear bombs to destroy the others in the first strike. If one country sent a nuclear missile to the enemy country, the enemy could know it immediately and retaliate by sending its own missile in the opposite direction. In the bargain, nations would destroy each other mutually. This threat of mutually assured destruction was for some years the only thin thread protecting the world from destruction.

Question 4.

Why did the scientists meet at Geneva?

OR

‘Technical experts were summoned to solve the problem that arose’. What was the problem?

OR

Why did technical experts from the nuclear power nations meet in Geneva? The scientists met at Geneva to discuss the problem of nuclear weapons. Since the tremor caused by an earthquake was the same as the tremor caused by a nuclear explosion, if countries which signed the treaty violated the terms, it would be difficult to know the violation. So the technical experts from the Soviet Union, United States and United Kingdom – three powers possessing nuclear weapons – met to come up with suggestions.

Question 5.

Why does Keilis-Borok feel that science is the indispensable guardian and caretaker of humanity? Support the statement with examples.

Answer:

Keilis-Borok feels that only the basic research in science can create a springboard

for developing new disaster-preparedness industry. Science is not the beginning and not the end either. If humanly used, it is their indispensable guardian and caretaker. In the present scenario the safety of mankind is threatened by both natural and man-made disasters. Be it a tsunami, be it terrorism, money alone cannot tackle the problem. Scientific solutions are the only hope. Thus the author has umpteen reasons to conclude that science is the hope of survival.

Question 6.

“Science is our indispensable guardian and caretaker”. Support this statement with a few examples which illustrate the writer’s stand.

Answer:

Science is our indispensable guardian and caretaker because it is only Science that can ensure that we move with time safely. When it comes to the question of ensuring that countries that have signed the treaty of not carrying out nuclear explosions keep to their word, it is only Science that can differentiate between the tremors caused by nuclear explosions and natural earthquakes. It is Science that can give us new sources of energy, new mineral deposits, and efficient defense from terrorism.

Answer the following questions in 5-6 / 8-10 sentences each:

Question 1.

When the author compares writers and scientists, what does he want to achieve?

Answer:

By comparing a writer and a scientist, the author wants to highlight the degree of involvement these two professionals have with their work. Though writers and scientists don't have much in common as far as their work is concerned, the author brings them together for comparison because their attitude to their work is the same. Just as a writer writes because he cannot live without writing, a scientist experiments because he is passionate about the joy of discovery.

Question 2.

Which are the natural and man-made disasters that threaten our civilization?

OR

What are the commonly recognized threats for the survival of our civilization?

Answer:

The very survival of our civilization is threatened by natural and man-made disasters. Among them are earthquakes, self-inflicted destruction of megacities, environmental catastrophes, economic and social crises. Today, a massive release of radioactivity from a nuclear waste disposal, an earthquake in the middle of a megalopolis, an outburst of mass violence, or any other global disaster, can cause up to a million of casualties, render large part of our world uninhabitable, trigger global economic depression, or a war in a 'hot' region.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

"If you are so clever, why are you so poor?"

- a) Who is the person referred to as 'you' and 'clever'?**
- b) What does the writer intend to show with this statement?**

Answer:

- a) The person referred to as 'you' and 'clever' is the scientist.**

b) The writer intends to show that although scientists are very wise, their wisdom does not generally help them in generating wealth. That is, scientists are generally wise but not wealthy.

Question 2.

This episode taught me that as a scientist I have people all over the world who think and interact the way I do.

- a) Who are the 'people' being referred to?
- b) Which episode is being spoken about?
- c) How does the world benefit from scientists who think alike?

Answer:

- a) The 'people' being referred to are scientists.
- b) The episode is the atmosphere of the cold war in which scientists from opposite sides had to come to an understanding to promote world peace and prevent the use of nuclear weapons.
- c) The world has the hope of survival. Scientists will have the common goal of preventing the use of nuclear weapons, irrespective of the nations they are.

Question 3.

"My theoretical knowledge had a direct application in the area of survival of humankind".

- a) In which field did the author, Borok, have theoretical knowledge?
- b) How would it have a direct application in the area of survival of humankind?
- c) How would the author's theoretical knowledge be helpful?

Answer:

- a) The author was doing research on seismic waves and had theoretical knowledge in this field.
- b) Underground nuclear explosions produced earth tremors like those generated by earthquakes. With this knowledge, the author would know the difference between the two. This would help in checking the violation of the Nuclear Test Ban agreement.
- c) The author's theoretical knowledge would be helpful in detecting the violation of the nuclear test ban agreement.

Science and Hope of Survival Summary in English

This prose is written by Kellis – Borok. He is a scientist and doing his research on the theory of seismic waves – tremors which is produced during an earthquake. There is a popular statement that if the person is so clever, why he is being so poor? Many youngsters want to become a scientist though it didn't give much money When compared to the other professions like Business, Law, Medicine.

According to Leo Tolstoy that a writer is not merely a person who writes. A Writer is a person who cannot live without writing. Similarly, the author believed it is true for scientists also. The scientists would get money and honor only after their discovery. Instead of money, they get freedom, friendship, and independence. The honors and promotions would depend on scientists themselves and they would get the feeling of revealing the secrets of nature.

The present situation is proof upon the sayings of Frank Press that “An instant understanding, the efficiency of thought and action, and a good feeling that comes when the like-minded people to work together. At the time of cold war in 1960 when the author was in Moscow and doing his research and involved in his problem; he enjoyed the mathematical challenge. He did not give much importance to how it connects to real life. One day he got the call from the President of the Russian Academy of Sciences. He had received the message from the Palace of Nations in Geneva.

The technical experts from the Soviet Union, the United States and the United Kingdom who had possessing nuclear weapons met behind closed doors. The President showed the letter from Geneva, an American Scientists, Frank Press quoted the authors work while arguing with Moscow experts. For his great surprize, the author had to attend the Geneva conference. At that time, everyone on the world was living under the threat of destruction which may cause by nuclear weapons. All three superpowers had enough nuclear bombs to destroy others. If anyone of them used, it would take 20 minutes to reach their targets but the other side had plenty of time to launch the reverse action against their enemies ensuring the destruction with the ominous acronym “MAD”. This MAD gave only a thin thread of protecting from the common destructive destiny.

The invention of more stronger bombs creates more imbalance. So the three nuclear powers were willing to come to an agreement, putting a ban on the nuclear weapon test. Hence, technical experts were called to solve the problem that arose.

The two problems were –

The nuclear powers had signed an agreement to stop the test of the new nuclear weapons

One of the participants had violated this agreement and secretly made an underground nuclear explosion. The problem was how can the other powers detect the violation?

This problem had a direct connection with the theory of seismic waves. The nuclear explosions produced earth tremors which are similar to those produced by earthquakes. How to identify whether the tremors are from an earthquake or by the nuclear explosion. The authors the theoretical knowledge had a direct application in the area of survival of the humankind. In this critical situation, with political tensions, Scientists and Engineers from the! opposite sides of the curtain had to find a solution, it seemed to be impossible. So according to author the scientists should give up their cultural differences and work hard for the benefit of the whole mankind.

Scientists were able to work, based on respect to hard evidence, known to be true ranking and they were skillful. They were working together to find a solution. Based on this the politicians took the most important decisions of their time Nuclear Test Ban.

From this event, the author learned that

he had similar people who think and interact like him all over the world.

There is no need to feel lonely in abroad.

Where there is science, there is the hope of survival and well being for all.

There is a general saying that scientists do not have a practical or general sense. In one or the other case, it may be true that the famous mathematician while thinking or involved in the subject may wear shoes of different pairs. However, if we look carefully we can find the other side of it. Scientists are the most practical people in the world. All new technologies, a new branch of industries from defense to entertainment are the fruit of scientists research.

The antibiotics, electronics, biotechnology synthetic fibers, the green revolution, genetic forensic diagnosis, etc., The basic scientific research could give us new sources of energy, new mineral deposits and efficient defense from terrorism, cure from cancer, forms of transportation, etc., These are all contributions of scientists. It is very common that the survival of our civilization is threatened by natural and man-made disasters. The most common are earthquakes, self – inflicted destructions of megacities, environmental great disaster, economic and social crisis.

The solid release of radioactivity from a nuclear waste disposal, an earthquake in the middle of a densely populated cities, an outburst of mass violence, or any other global disaster can cause millions of casualties, Even it can cause a large part of our world uninhabitable and quickens the global economic depression or a war in a “hot” region. These are controlled by known techniques and spent one lakh crores of dollars.

The hope and the responsibility for breaking the agreement depend not only on money but on intellectual resources. According to French Proverb, Nobody is satisfied with his wealth, but everybody is satisfied with his wisdom. Only the basic research can create a springboard for developing new disaster preparedness industry. I George Bundy says that “Ours is the time of contest over issues” not completely understood.

Scientific research is an exciting venture into the great unknown. It had a great role in human survival. We all safely move by the scientist’s tools. Finally, the author reminds us that science is not beginning or end. If it is humanly used, it acts as a very useful and necessary guardian and caretaker.

OFF TO OUTER SPACE TOMORROW MORNING

Off to Outer Space Tomorrow Morning Poem Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

Question 1.

Pick out two phrases from line 1 which suggest the final moments for the launch of the rocket.

Answer:

The two phrases from the line I which suggest the final moments for the launch of the rocket are a countdown and last look.

Question 2.

With what feelings is the speaker flying out of the earth?

- a. despair**
- b. lack of confidence**
- c. apprehension?**
- d. doubt about his return to the earth?**
- e. Choose your response from the ones given above or give your own. Say which line or lines in the first stanza support your response.**

Answer:

The speaker or author of the poem had apprehension about the flying out of the earth.

Question 3.

State the reason for the poet to say “calendars and clocks” are useless in space (stanza 2)

Answer:

There is no work, no day and night or seasons. Totally there was no change in atmosphere, so there is no need for a calendar or clock.

Question 4.

The expression “winter under lock”, means, that in space.

- a. there is no change of seasons.**
- b. seasons change frequently.**
- c. weather is chilly always**
- d. weather is very hot always**

Answer:

The expression “Winter under lock” means, in space weather is chill always.

Question 5.

The speaker has the feeling that he is imprisoned. What might have been the reason for him to have such a feeling? (Read lines 9 to 12)

Answer:

In space, there is no communication, no letters, no mail. Nobody visits him Totally he was alone and he felt that he was in prison and he imprisoned in it.

Question 6.

The speaker says, “Teacups circling around me like the planets around the sun. “Why does it happen only in space and not on the earth?”

Answer:

Earth has gravitational force but in space, there is the absence of gravitational pull, due to this the teacup or whatever may be the object, it would revolve around like the planets around the Sun.

Question 7.

Read stanza 5, and identify the indirect comparison (metaphor) in it.

Answer:

In stanza 5, the indirect comparison or metaphor is “Tracking through your telescope my upward shooting star”.

Question 8.

The speaker in the line (19) says “But you needn’t think I’ll give a damn for you”. This is the same as saying

- a) I don’t think I will have time to think about you.
- b) I don’t think I will have no time to think about you.

Answer:

The speaker in line 19 says “But you needn’t think I’ll give a damn for you” means

- (a) I don’t think I will have time to think about you.

Read and appreciate

Question 1.

The tone of the poem is one of

- a) mourning [×]
- b) jubilation [✓]
- c) disappointment [×]
- d) sadness [×]
- e) humor [×]
- f) anger [×]
- g) protest [×]

You may think more than one is appropriate. Mark if you think so, and mark () if you do not. Justify your choice in your group.

Question 2.

Do you think that the repetition of the last line of every stanza is intentional? What might have been the purpose behind it? What does it suggest? Sing it aloud and try to find out the answer.

Answer:

Yes, the repetition of the last line of every stanza is intentional. The poet had a joyful mood, and he feels more enthusiasm – off to outer space. The purpose was he should say to everybody.

Question 3.

The poem is not full of figures of speech. Yet the poem has two similes. Pick them.

Answer:

The poem had two similes. They are

- i) In solitary confinement as complete as any gaol, and**
- ii) with the teacups circling around me like the planets around the sun.**

Question 4.

Pick some instances of daily routine mentioned in the poem. Do you think the speaker doesn't want to do these things?

Answer:

Some instances of daily routine mentioned in the poem are

pass the helmet from its plastic hook

cross out the name from the telephone book

seeing the calendar

seeing the time

awaking at daylight

sleeping at night

watching the television

writing letters

posting mails

visiting friends

Question 5.

A group of rhyming words has been given to you. Write down the remaining ones. You may practice them with proper pronunciation with the help of your teacher.

ex. Look, hook, book

Answer:

Question 6.

The rhyme scheme in the poem is a a a b. Do you find any other rhyme scheme in the pattern of the poem? Look at the last line of all the stanzas, and find it out.

Answer:

The last line is repeated in all the stanzas to stress or emphasize the information to all with pride.

Off to Outer Space Tomorrow Morning Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Question 1.

Off to outer space, tomorrow morning was the poem written by ___

- a. Leonore Marshall
- b. Rock Saumure
- c. George Bernard Shaw
- d. Norman Nicholson

Answer:

- d. Norman Nicholson

Question 2.

You can start the ___

- a. television
- b. space travel
- c. count down
- d. writing

Answer:

- c. count down

Question 3.

You can take a ___

- a. last look

b. plastic look

c. book

d. helmet

Answer:

a. last look

Question 4.

You can pass me my ____

a. book

b. hook

c. helmet

d. telephone book

Answer:

c. helmet

Question 5.

You can cross out ____

a. my name

b. wishes

c. my book

d. writing

Answer:

a. my name

Question 6.

I'm off to outer space tomorrow ____

a night

b. morning

c. evening

d. noon

Answer:

b. morning

Question 7.

There won't be any __

a. hotels

b. houses

c. calendar

d. friends

Answer:

c. calendar

Question 8.

There won't be any __

a. switch

b. lock

c. knock

d. clock

Answer:

d. clock

Question 9.

Daylight will be on the __

a. sky

b. switch

c. head

d. floor

Answer:

b. switch

Question 10.

I'll doze when I'm __

a. sleepy

b. tired

c. happy

d. sad

Answer:

a. sleepy

Question 11.

I'll wake without a _

a. alarm

b. call

c. knock

d. round

Answer:

c. knock

Question 12.

I'll be writing no, _

a. lessons

b. letters

c. poems

d. mail

Answer:

b. letters

Question 13.

Nobody visits me and not a ___ in hail

a. friend

b. guest

c. relatives

d. person

Answer:

a. friend

Question 14.

In solitary ___ as complete as any gaol

a. prison

b. confinement

c. goal

d. space

Answer:

b. confinement

Question 15.

When my ___ door is sealed

a. wooden

b. iron

c. capsule

d. new

Answer:

c. capsule

Question 16.

With the teacups circling ___ me like the planets

a. round

b. back

c. turned

d. around

Answer:

a. round

Question 17.

I'll be center of my ___ a universe of one

a. place

- b. home
- c. space
- d. gravity

Answer:

- d. gravity

Question 18.

You can watch on __

- a. movies
- b. the play
- c. television
- d. dance

Answer:

- c. television

Question 19.

Tracking through your __

- a. line
- b. way
- c. path
- d. telescope

Answer:

- d. telescope

Question 20.

You needn't think I" give a ____

- a. damn
- b. helmet
- c. gift
- d. surprize

Answer:

a. damn

Question 21.

When the rockets __ me on my trans-galactic hop

a. follow

b. move

c. pull

d. thrust

Answer:

d. thrust

Question 22.

With twenty hundred ____ before the first stop

a. light-years

b. million

c. dollars

d. rupees

Answer:

a. light-years

Question 23.

Every __ on the earth can go and blow your top

a. one

b. soul

c. body

d. person

Answer:

b. soul

Question 24.

Daylight will be on the switch and __ under lock.

a. summer

b. rainy

c. winter

d. daily

Answer:

c. winter

II. Match the following :

A

Answer:

1 – f

2 – a

3 – e

4 – b

5 – c

B

Answer:

1 – e

2 – a

3 – d

4 – b

5 – c

III. Give one word/phrase for the following:

Question 1.

A vehicle used for traveling or carrying things into space.

Answer:

rocket

Question 2.

Part of the spacecraft separated from the main.

Answer:

capsule

Question 3.

Weight due to the force of gravity or attraction.

Answer:

center of gravity

Question 4.

The author of the poem 'Off to Outer Space Tomorrow Morning'.

Answer:

Norman Nicholson

Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences each:

Question 1.

Why does the poet say 'you can take a last look' and 'you can cross out my name in the telephone book'?

Answer:

The poet might be saying these words both teasingly and seriously. In the first instance, going by the jovial tone throughout the poem, we can say that it is his way of saying goodbye and as it is the space voyage, he would be out of touch with his near and dear ones. So he says they can take a last look and cross out his name from the telephone book. However, we cannot rule out another more serious interpretation. Maybe deep down, the speaker has a doubt whether he will ever come back because anything can happen to him. So maybe he indirectly refers to this tragic possibility.

Question 2.

'Space' and 'confinement' signify concepts that are opposite. Why does the poet choose to talk about 'solitary confinement' in 'outer space'?

Answer:

Space is boundless, vast and open. Yet, unlike on the earth, none can freely move around in space. One has to remain in the spaceship. That is why the poet refers to his existence in the spaceship as solitary confinement.

Question 3.

Why does Norman Nicholson feel that he is imprisoned in space?

Answer:

The speaker would be totally cut off from the world. Nobody would visit him nor would he have a friend near him. He would not write any letters nor would he receive any. He would be like a prisoner.

Question 4.

The speaker in ‘Off to Outer Space Tomorrow Morning’ is uncertain of his return. How does he express this?

Answer:

The speaker says that people can take a last’ look at him as he is all set to go to outer space. The word ‘last’ is indicative of the fact that the speaker is uncertain of his return. Further, the speaker says that his name could be crossed out from the telephone book. It is as if he has the feeling that his existence on the earth needn’t be recorded.

Answer the following questions in 6-8 sentences each:

Question 1.

What indirect references does the poet make to the interferences that people suffer from in life?

Answer:

When he says that he won’t give a damn for the person he addresses, there is the suggestion that in our day-to-day existence, we cannot live our lives without bothering about what other people say or what other people think of us. Again, his statement that when he reaches space after having travelled twenty-hundred light-years, he would no longer care for others who explode and show their anger, shows his disdain for interferences by others in our lives. Thus the poem, though in a light vein, makes indirect references to some of the unhealthy aspects of life on the earth.

Question 2.

How does the poet describe life in space?

OR

What are the feelings of the poet in the poem ‘Off to Outer Space Tomorrow Morning’?

Answer:

The poet uses a unique technique. Through negative references he conveys positive feelings. When he compares the life in outer space to solitary confinement in a jail and when he says there would be no friend who would enquire after his well-being, it is as though he laments about his loneliness. But then, the tone, that is light and jovial, persists throughout the poem and we can make out that he is looking forward to the experience of being alone amidst the vastness of the outer space with no one to disturb him. The poet has no sense of regret as such an existence offers him the splendour of being the centre of his own gravity, a universe by himself, with tea cups circling around him like the planets in orbit.

Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below them:

Question 1.

“There won’t be any calendar Daylight will he on the switch and winter under lock.”

a) Why are calendars useless in outer space?

b) Winter under lock” – what does this mean?

Answer:

a) There is no concept of day and night in space, hence no concept of time. Therefore, calendars are useless in outer space.

b) ‘Winter under lock’ means that there is no change of seasons.

Question 2.

“There won’t be any calendar, there won’t be any clock”.

a) Who has made this statement?

b) Where is the speaker experiencing this?

c) Why will there be no calendars or clocks?

Answer:

a) The poet Norman Nicholson.

b) In space.

c) There is no concept of time or day and night in space. So there is no need for calendars or clocks.

Question 3.

‘With the teacups circling round me like the planets round the Sun’.

a) Where does the speaker experience this?

OR

Where does this happen?

b) Why does the speaker have the above feeling?

OR

Why would the poet feel so?

Answer:

a) In outer space.

b) The earth has the force of gravity, but in space, there is no gravitational force. Hence the poet says that when the capsule doors are shut and when he is on the space flight beyond the earth’s gravitational force, the teacups would fly around him like the planets in an orbit around the sun.

Question 4.

“In solitary confinement as complete as any gaol.”

a) What is referred to as 'solitary confinement'?

OR

What two aspects are compared in the line?

b) Why does the speaker say so?

Answer:

a) Life in the spaceship is referred to as solitary confinement.

b) The speaker uses this comparison to highlight the fact that he is going to be totally cut off from the world. Though space is vast and open, one cannot move about freely like on the earth. One has to remain in the spaceship. That is why the poet refers to his existence in the spaceship as solitary confinement.

Off to Outer Space Tomorrow Morning Poem Summary in English

This poem was written by Norman Nicholson. In this poem, the poet describes the situation and emotions that one who feels before his adventurous work i.e., space travel. Everything was ready for his space voyage... If we had lost look at him, After the count down, he requests his friends to strike his name from the telephone book. There won't be any difference between day and night in space. So, Calenders and clocks are useless there. There will not be any change of seasons.

The sleep when he feels sleepy. The poet won't be writing any letter. There is none to visit in space. It will be like imprisonment for him. In space, there is no gravitational pull. Teacups will circle round him like planets around the sun. The people on earth can day and night in space. So, Calenders and clocks are useless there. There will not be much change of seasons. The sleep when he feels sleepy. The poet won't be writing any letter.

There is none to visit in space. It will be like imprisonment for him. In space, there is no gravitational pull. Teacups will circle round him like planets around the sun. The people on earth can watch him through telescope or cameras. But he doesn't have time to think about us. When the rockets move across galaxies by the power of propeller, everyone on earth would be angry as they didn't get a chance.

NARAYANPUR INCIDENT

Narayanpur Incident Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

Answer the following question

Narayanpur Incident Lesson Notes Question 1.

Why had students been marching How was it an unusual march?

Answer:

The students were marching to serve a notice to the Collector, a representative of His Majesty's government. Their demand was to ask the British to quit India or face the consequences. It was an unusual march because the students, who were the marchers, marched in complete silence as if the police, some of whom walked in front of the students and some by their sides, did not exist. After serving the notice, except for shouting once, 'Mahatma Gandhi ki jai', they briskly marched back in the same manner as they had come.

Narayanpur Incident Notes Question 2.

A police officer was seen talking to the student leaders. Can you guess what the officer had been talking to them?

Answer:

Really the police officer has not expected this type of March. They might think that there were shouts, slogans and people will violate. To control the situation they might use their lottery etc. So he came to students and asked about this. There was less work for them.

Narayanpur Incident Question Answer Question 3.

Babu and Manju were a bit disappointed with the way students were marching. What was the reason?

Answer:

The students were totally silent and they went back peacefully. For young children, the significance of the silent march wouldn't have made much sense. They would have taken slogans, lathi-charge, and bloodshed as indicative of heroism and patriotism. So, Babu and Manju were a bit disappointed with the way the students were marching.

10th English Narayanpur Incident Notes Question 4.

What had the police expected about the way of protest? How did the student leaders manage the protest?

Answer:

The police expected that there will be so much protest against the British. So many people including a teacher were arrested. The angry people might destroy the public property'. The revolt people could do anything and disturb the peace of the people. But the intention of the student's leaders was completely different. They planned to do more things and give more troubles to police officers. If they get arrested easily, there was of no use? They had to awaken the people by distributing the copies of Mahatma's speech., etc. So they managed their march so silently and showed their protest against British rule non – violently.

The Narayanpur Incident Questions And Answers Question 5.

What was there in the 'mysterious parcel'? What suspicion did the police have about that?

Answer:

There was a cyclostyling machine in the mysterious parcel. The higher officer knew about the cyclostyle machine and a number of copies of Mahatma's speech were distributed in that town. They wanted to know, where that machine was, and who were the people doing all these things. So they talked to themselves, that night they may attack their house with a search warrant.

Narayanpur Incident Lesson Pdf Question 6.

Why had Patil, the sub-inspector come there? Who believed him? What was the result?

Answer:

Patil, the sub-inspector of police was the friend of the teacher. So he wanted to help them. He came and explained the situation, it was a safer side if they handed over (gave) that machine to him. They may escape from arrest. Amma believed him and handed over that machine to a police officer before the other police come.

The Narayanpur Incident Questions And Answers Pdf Question 7.

What do you think is the writer of the incident trying to impress upon the readers?

Answer:

The writer of the Narayanapura incident tries to impress upon the readers how different people fought against the British in different ways. Leaders like the Mahatma fought selflessly and inspired thousands of Indians like the teacher, his family, and other young college students like Suman. More significantly, there were people like Patil, who belonged to the system but had their hearts in the freedom struggle. In fact, their situation was pitiable. For the sake of their livelihood, they would have taken up the job of the police. But secretly they were with the freedom fighters and tried to do their bit risking their own safety.

Narayanpur Incident Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

The Narayanpur Incident Answer Key Question 1.

Narayanapur incident was written by

- a. Shashi Deshpande**
- b. Mohan**
- c. D.S.P.**
- d. Sriranga**

Answer:

- a. Shashi Deshpande**

Narayanpur Incident Notes Pdf Question 2.

The year 1942 was the line of ____

- a. Non – cooperation
- b. Swadeshi movement
- c. Quit India Movement
- d. Independence movement

Answer:

- c. Quit India Movement

Narayanpur Incident Lesson Question Answer Question 3.

A police officer who came to see the procession was ____

- a. S.P.
- b. D.C.P
- c. D.G.P.
- d. D.S.P

Answer:

- d. D.S.P

The Narayanpur Incident Question Answers Question 4.

The two boys holding aloft a picture of the _____

- a. Jawaharlal Nehru
- b. Mahatma
- c. Bharat Matha
- d. Goddess

Answer:

- b. Mahatma

Narayanpur Incident Summary In Kannada Question 5.

The children like others rushed out ____ of the rain

- a. careless
- b. heedless
- c. needless

d. fearless

Answer:

b. heedless

The Narayanpur Incident Pdf Question 6.

They walked in complete ____

a. with noise

b. without noise

c. silence

d. with slogans

Answer:

c. silence

Narayanpur Incident Lesson In Kannada Question 7.

The students turned back and one of them shouted ____

a. Mahatma Gandhi ki Jai

b. Quit India

c. Jai Jai

d. Jai Bharat Matha ki

Answer:

a. Mahatma Gandhi ki Jai

Narayanpur Incident Lesson Summary Question 8.

Unless you're ____ said amma

a. Gandhiji

b. Patriotic

c. Adolf Hitler

d. Indian

Answer:

a. Gandhiji

The Narayanpur Incident Summary Question 9.

That was a notice served on the collector, as ____

- a. British officer
- b. authoritative
- c. Patriotic
- d. representative

Answer:

- d. representative

Narayanpur Incident English Notes Question 10.

It's like a ____ of war

- a. notice
- b. declaration
- c. friend
- d. starting

Answer:

- b. declaration

Narayanpur Incident Lesson In Kannada Question 11.

The boy ____ in with a large newspaper covered parcel in his hands

- a. moved
- b. walked
- c. staggered
- d. marched

Answer:

- c. staggered

Narayanpur Incident Summary In English Question 12.

The mysterious parcel which turned to be a ____ machine

- a. sewing
- b. cyclostyling
- c. secret

d. big

Answer:

b. cyclostyling

Narayanpur Incident Summary In English Question 13.

Your husband was my ___ in school

a. classmate

b. senior

c. friend

d. well-wisher

Answer:

c. friend

The Narayanpur Incident Question Answer Question 14.

‘Please, Patil Saheb’, Amma said rather ____

a. impatiently

b. calmly

c. shrewdly

d. patiently

Answer:

a. impatiently

The Narayanpur Incident In English Question 15.

Mohan burst out again, ‘Amma, how can you trust ____?’

a. person

b. neighbor

c. policeman

d. friend

Answer:

c. policeman

Narayanpur Incident 10th Lesson Question 16.

‘Come in, Amma ___ to the man

- a. inviting**
- b. looking**
- c. calling**
- d. beckoned**

Answer:

- d. beckoned**

The Narayanpur Incident Class 8 Question Answer Question 17.

O.K. Amma, Mohan said and ___ into puja room

- a. went**
- b. ducked**
- c. stepped**
- d. run**

Answer:

- b. ducked**

Question 18.

No need for Mohan to ___ It’s the police

- a. announce**
- b. state**
- c. said**
- d. feared**

Answer:

- a. announce**

II. Match the following :

Answer:

1 – c

2 – f

3 – a

4 – b

5 – d

6 – e

III Give one word for the following:

Question 1.

Walk or move unsteadily.

Answer:

stagger

Question 2.

Condition of being lost in dreamy, pleasant thoughts.

Answer:

reverie

Question 3.

tremble slightly or vibrate.

Answer:

quiver

Question 4.

bum or shine unsteadily

Answer:

flicker

Question 5.

showing sound judgment and common sense.

Answer:

shrewdly

Question 6.

Pull or drag roughly and with much effort.

Answer:

lug

Answer the following questions:

Question 1.

How did the policeman help the teacher's family? Why?

Answer:

The police sub-inspector Patil visits the house of the school teacher who has been arrested for participating in the Quit India movement. Though the teacher's wife and children are afraid at first, the sub-inspector puts them at ease introducing himself as a classmate of the teacher in a school and recalling how the teacher had helped him escape from caning several times. He also expresses his love for his country. He tells them about the impending raid on their house that night since the police had information about their possessing a cyclostyling machine used for making copies of the Mahatma's speech. He offers to take the machine to a safe place till the search was over. He also asks all the others except the teacher's family to leave the place as they could be charged with hiding people as well. Thus, the sub-inspector helps the teacher's family.

Question 2.

How do you know that Mohan's mother was supportive of their struggle?

Answer:

Mohan's mother used the pooja room to hide the cyclostyling machine. She also allowed Suman to hide in the house. From the conversation between Mohan and Mohan's mother, it is clear that she advised them on what to do and what not to do.

ON TOP OF THE WORLD

On Top of the World Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

Answer the following questions:

Question 1.

Give an account of Dicky Dolma's hardship and challenges she faced before she was qualified for this venture.

Answer:

Dicky Dolma faced emotional, financial and physical hardships and challenges. At the tender age of eleven, she lost her mother and brother. When she was getting ready for the final frontier, her father was bed-ridden and she needed a lot of money for his treatment. Despite these problems, she practiced for four hours daily in order to achieve her goal.

Question 2.

How had Dolma described her preparedness for the task of scaling Mount Everest?

Answer:

From childhood days she had an urge to climb Mount Everest. Daily she watched the beautiful, breathtaking view of the Mountain. She had firm determination, and hard work helped her. She practiced for 4 hours a day. She had one-track mind and ready to face hardships. Her desire grew when she came to know about the newly opened mountaineering institute in Manali. She was just 16 years at that time. She joined the institute and got 'A' grade and selected at all India level.

II. Answer the following question :

Question 1.

“With zeal and determination, there is nothing that one cannot achieve”. What else do you think is necessary to achieve, besides zeal and determination. Have a discussion in the class.

Answer:

Zeal and determination are definitely two decisive factors in achieving success. However, there can be a host of other factors too. There can be educational challenges. If you are particular about your career in other fields, you cannot neglect your education. If a person is already employed, there will be problems of leave, the permission of the superiors etc. There can be family matters.

There can be objections from your elders, friends, and relatives. If you are already married, the situation can be worse still. There can be health problems putting an end to your passion. There can be a problem of not having proper training centres as mountaineering needs coaching. Compounding all this can be a financial problem. Thus we see that nothing comes easy on a silver platter.

Question 2.

Narrate the adventurous story of Dicky Dolma in your own words.

Answer:

Dicky Dolma has become a name to be reckoned with as the youngest to climb Mount Everest. This she did when she was barely 19, against many odds. She faced emotional, financial and physical hardships and challenges. At the tender age of eleven, she lost her mother and brother. When she was getting ready for the final frontier, her father was bedridden and she needed a lot of money for his treatment. Despite these problems, she practiced for four hours daily in order to achieve her goal.

We can say that her passion went back to her childhood days because being born in Palchan in Himachal Pradesh, she had always been surrounded by mountain peaks, and she had the desire to enjoy the view from the mountain peak all along. Mountaineering course with an 'A' grade at Manali in 1991 helped in a substantial way. Finally, Dolma was chosen for an all-India expedition to Mount Everest. For Dolma it was the 'dream come true' moment.

On Top of the World Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Question 1.

“On Top of the world” was written by ____

- a. Dicky dolma
- b. Meha
- c. Mathur
- d. Tessy Koshy

Answer:

- a. Dicky dolma

Question 2.

Dicky Dolma was born in ____ Himachal Pradesh

- a. Manali
- b. Simla
- c. Kulu
- d. Palchan

Answer:

- d. Palchan

Question 3.

She had been regular at the Nationals since ____ and still participate.

- a. 1993
- b. 1989
- c. 1978
- d. 1979

Answer:

- b. 1989

Question 4.

She was deeply interested in __ before mountaineering

- a. listening music
- b. sports
- c. skiing

d. trekking

Answer:

c. skiing

Question 5.

As for taking the challenge of the ___ mountains, it wasn't a difficult decision

a. beautiful

b. lofty

c. highest

d. snow -claded

Answer:

b. lofty

Question 6.

Dicky Dolma took up the basic mountaineering course at in 1991

a. Simla

b.Kulu

c.Manali

d. Palchan

Answer:

c.Manali

Question 7.

She scored ___ grade in training course

a. A

b. B

c. C

d. D

Answer:

a. A

Question 8.

She lost her mother when she was ___ years old

- a. 10
- b. 11
- c. 16
- d. 19

Answer:

- b. 11

Question 9.

That urge to climb those peaks and ___ the breathtaking view

- a. feel
- b. zeal
- c. savour
- d. grandeur

Answer:

- c. savour

Question 10.

For the final selection, she had to undergo three successful ___ to different mountains

- a. training
- b. expeditions
- c. feat
- d. quest

Answer:

- b. expeditions

Question 11.

As for sincerity and responsibilities, she was not a ____

- a. shirker
- b. determined
- c. loose – hearted

d. fickle minded

Answer:

a. shirker

Question 12.

Besides mountaineering, she loves music especially old ____ songs

a. English film

b. Folk

c. Hindi film

d. Devotional

Answer:

c. Hindi film

II. Match the following:

Answer:

1 – e

2 – a

3 – d

4 – f

5 – b

6 – c

III. Give one-word of phrase for the following:

Question 1.

National level competitions in skiing.

Answer:

Nationals

Question 2.

Experience and enjoy.

Answer:

Savour

Question 3.

Mind with determination

Answer:

One-track mind

Question 4.

an organized journey with a purpose

Answer:

Expedition

Question 5.

an unbelievable and almost frightening adventure.

Answer:

awesome feat

Question 6.

in the true sense of the term.

Answer:

literally

Question 7.

to take any risk

Answer:

to go to any length

Question 8.

the person running away from the risk or responsibility.

Answer:

shirker

Answer the following questions:

Question 1.

Why did Dicky Dolma take to mountaineering?

OR

What was Dicky Dolma fascinated by since her childhood? Why?

OR

How did the lofty Himalayas inspire Dicky Dolma?

Answer:

Right from her childhood Dolma had been fascinated by the grandeur of the snow-clad peaks of the Himalayas. Being born and brought up in Palchan, beautiful mountain peaks surrounded her. The first thing she saw every morning when she woke up was the mountains. The urge to climb these peaks and savour the breathtaking view from the top was the reason she took to mountaineering.

Question 2.

What does Dolma say about the view from the top of Mount Everest?

OR

How did Dicky Dolma feel after climbing Mount Everest?

Answer:

Dolma says that the view from the top is something that only an Everest climber can understand, but will not be able to describe fully. It is much more breathtaking than one could ever imagine. She says that the National and State awards that she has won are nothing compared to the experience of seeing that view.

Question 3.

What factors encouraged Dolma to take up the basic engineering course?

OR

Dolma says, "It is not a difficult decision for me to take up the challenge of the lofty mountains. Why does she say so?"

OR

Taking up mountaineering was not a difficult decision for Dicky Dolma. Justify.

Answer:

From her childhood, Dolma was fascinated by the grandeur of the snow-clad peaks of the Himalayas. Beautiful mountain peaks surrounded her house in Palchan. They were the first things she saw every morning when she woke up and this developed in her the zeal and the urge to climb those peaks and savour the breathtaking view from the top. In addition, after sensing her keenness, even her family and friends supported her in her decision. Hence, taking up the challenge of the lofty mountains wasn't a difficult decision for her. So, at the tender age of 16, she registered for the basic mountaineering course in Manali.

Question 4.

What can we learn from Dolma's life?

Answer:

From Dolma's life we can realise that if the spirit is willing, nothing is impossible. Dolma faced problems in life right from her childhood. At the tender age of eleven, she lost her mother and brother. When she was getting ready for the final frontier, her father was bed-ridden and she needed a lot of money for his treatment. She faced emotional, financial and physical hardships and challenges. Despite these problems, she practiced for four hours daily in order to achieve her goal. We can say that her passion which went back to her childhood days and her grit and determination made her realize her dream.

A GREAT MARTYR EVER CHERISHED

A Great Martyr Ever Cherished Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

I. Answer the following question briefly :

Question 1.

The writer speaks of the 'smile' that welcomes anyone who enters Hanif's house. What more do we know about his 'smile'?

Answer:

Those who enter Hanif's house were welcomed by his smile. But this smile was confined in the picture frame. Lieutenant Hanifuddin was a young martyr. He sacrificed his life during the Kargil war, at the age of 25 years. He loved his work and was happy all the time.

Question 2.

What did Hanif choose as his mission? Why did he do so?

Answer:

During his training at the IMA, he changed gently to a dedicated soldier. Perhaps Hanifuddin knew that his life was so short and he needed to repeatedly remind himself of his mission. Though he came from a family of musicians, he decided to change the lives, so he joined the army or chose this mission to serve our nation.

Question 3.

Life for Hanif, in the beginning, was never a smooth sail. Why was it so?

Answer:

When Hanif was eight years old, he lost his father. He had to take the responsibility to look after his three younger brothers. His mother Hema Aziz had a touring job and was out very often. They had to do their work for themselves. So it was not a smooth sail.

Question 4.

The absence of a mother from home taught the children something. What was that?

Answer:

Hanif's mother, a vocal artiste, would often have to leave Hanif and his brothers alone, as she travelled with the performance wing of the Information and Broadcasting Ministry. The absence of the mother taught the children the virtue of self-reliance. Their mother going to work without excuse gave them the message that one's duty is the most important thing in life.

Question 5.

How does the writer describe the 'introvert' Hanif?

Answer:

The writer says that Hanif, who was an introvert, started making friends only when he was already 14 years of age. However, this did not come in his way of helping others. Quite a few remembered his helpful gesture even after his death.

Question 6.

Hanif was a young man with varied talents and interest. Illustrate this statement by drawing support from the text.

Answer:

The life for Hanif was always ekdam bindas. He sketched very well, made beautiful cards out of waste materials, read books and loved playing the drums. As a young man, he was so talented and had an interest in life.

II. Answer the following question :

Question 1.

Share your thoughts and impression of Hanif with your classmates.

Activity – Self-assessment

you: Good evening, I'm Rajesh, I'm a journalist and I report for Karnataka Herald. Would you mind sharing your experience with our readers, please? Here are a few questions. May I start.

Hanif: Come on, It's a pleasure talking to you people. I mean reporters. Well, I'm ready..... you can start.

You: Why did you choose the military as your career?

Hanif: Very good question. I didn't know much about the army. From my mother, I came to know about the Armed forces. After 6 months of training in

IMA, I choose this as my career.

You: How was the training in IMA?

Hanif: The training was very tough. Those difficulties made me strong.

You: Where was your first posting?

Hanif: My first posting was 11 Rajputana Rifles at Jaipur.

You: Afterwards where were you did transferred to?

Hanif: Then I was transferred to Saichen.

You: What are your hobbies, Sir?

Hanif: Whenever find free time, I sketch the scenarios, make cards, etc.,

You: Which is your favorite hobby?

Hanif: I read books and loved to play drums.

You: What is your motto, Sir?

Hanif: "We change lives".

You: Thank you, Sir, May God bless you, wish you good luck. Thanks once again.

Hanif: It's my pleasure. I feel good with you. Thank's a lot. See you, Bye, Bye

A Great Martyr Ever Cherished Additional Questions and Answers

Multiple Choice Questions

Question 1.

'A Great Martyr ever Cherished' was edited by ____

- a. Hema Aziz**
- b. Meha Mathur and Tessy Koshy**
- c. Hanif**
- d. Nafisudolin**

Answer:

- b. Meha Mathur and Tessy Koshy**

Question 2.

The Sand, like is life, slipped away ____

- a. forever
- b. always
- c. nevertheless
- d. often

Answer:

- a. forever

Question 3.

Enter the Hanifuddin household and a warm smile will __you to step right in.

- a. welcome
- b. call
- c. invite
- d. beckon

Answer:

- d. beckon

Question 4.

The __ sector in Kargil, now called sub-sector Hanif in memory of Hanifuddin's bravery.

- a. Kargil East
- b. North
- c. Tartuk
- d. West

Answer:

- c. Tartuk

Question 5.

His friends called him as ____

- a. Yaar
- b. buddy
- c. paul

d. khalifa

Answer:

d. khalifa

Question 6.

One can only ___ from a flashcard, found amongst his belongings, which simply said, “We change lives”.

a. surmise

b. predict

c. thought

d. think

Answer:

a. surmise

Question 7.

Hanif’s mother was ___

a. Neha

b. HemaAziz

c. Zeba

d. Gathima

Answer:

b. HemaAziz

Question 8.

Hanif has ___ younger brother.

a. 4

b. 2

c. 1

d. 3

Answer:

d. 3

Question 9.

Hanif's elder brother name was ____

- a. Khalif
- b. Syed
- c. Nafisuddin
- d. Fazil

Answer:

- c. Nafisuddin

Question 10.

Nafisuddin worked as a __ at JD Tyler School

- a. Professor
- b. teacher
- c. lecturer
- d. Headmaster

Answer:

- b. teacher

Question 11.

Hanif had no friends till 14 years of age because of he wan a ____

- a. alone
- b. intelligent
- c. ideal
- d. introvert

Answer:

- a. alone

Question 12.

Hanif got training into the ____

- a. IIM
- b. IMA

c. IEF

d. IAM

Answer:

b. IMA

Question 13.

The training was so tough and Hanif said it was like ___ at midnight

a. sleep

b. awake

c. mussourie bath

d. cold bath

Answer:

c. mussourie bath

Question 14.

Hanif joined the ___ and was posted.

a. 11 Rajputana Rigles

b. Narasingh post

c. Assame camp

d. Jaipur battalion

Answer:

a. 11 Rajputana Rigles

Question 15.

The officers of Raj Rifs formed a music group now called as ___

a. Raj music

b. Hanif 7

c. Hanif sector

d. Kargil group

Answer:

b. Hanif 7

Question 16.

The ___ post had been named after a brave soldier.

- a. Hanif
- b. khalif
- c. Rajput
- d. Nanasing

Answer:

- d. Nanasing

Question 17.

His family has started a school in ___ under the Hanif foundation.

- a. Kulu
- b. Manali.
- c. Jaipur
- d Turtak

Answer:

- a. Kulu

Question 18.

He was posted at Jaipur and then at ___, just prior to the Kargil was of 1999.

- a. Palchan
- b. Kulu
- c. Saichan
- d. Rajput

Answer:

- c. Saichan

Question 19.

Hema Aziz politely declines the Indian army's ___ offer of a petrol pump.

- a. gift
- b. compensation

c. free

d. bravery

Answer:

b. compensation

Question 20.

People live him die, but continue to live forever in the hearts of ___.

a. friends

b. patriots

c. well-wisher

d. family

Answer:

b. patriots

Question 21.

There are some families whose ___ bread earner in gone. They need it more.

a. Sole

b. Prime

c. important

d. only

Answer:

a. Sole

II. Match the following :

Answer:

1 – d

2 – f

3 – e

4 – b

5 – c

6 – a

III. Give one word for the following:

Question 1.

The war between India and Pakistan in 1999.

Answer:

Kargil

Question 2.

To try to draw, though not seriously bravery does live on.

Answer:

dabbled in art

Question 3.

his bravery was felt by one and all.

Answer:

in the air of

Question 4.

A soldier who dies for the sake of his/her country.

Answer:

martyr

Question 5.

A musical instrument.

Answer:

Casio

Question 6.

A person who is interested in his own thoughts.

Answer:

introvert

Question 7.

A religious philosophy that advocates the attainment of Godhood through prayer, meditation, simple and strict way of living.

Answer:

Sufism

Question 8.

Hanif's mother.

Answer:

Hema Aziz

Question 9.

Hanif's elder brother.

Answer:

Nafisuddin

Answer the following questions:

Question 1.

Write a note on Hanifuddin's education.

Answer:

Hanifuddin did his schooling from Kerala School in New Delhi. He graduated from Shivaji College also in New Delhi. After his graduation, he joined the Indian Military Academy for military training.

Question 2.

What were the dreams of Hanif? Do you think they were fulfilled?

OR

Hanif had two dreams. Were they fulfilled? Give reasons for your answer.

Answer:

Hanif had dreamt that he would rise up the ranks. This dream could not be fulfilled because he was killed in the Kargil war. Another of his dreams was that a post be named after him. That dream came true when a sub-sector was named after him.

Question 3.

Hanifuddin 'A Great Martyr' was a talented young man. Describe.

OR

As a soldier; Hanif had various talents and interests in his youth'. Illustrate the statement.

OR

How do you support the statement Hanif was a man of varied interests and talents’?

Answer:

Hanif, even as a young boy of fourteen, reached out to all. It’s a pity that he died before his life could actually blossom. But what is remarkable is that, when he lived, in addition to his concern for others and dedication to the country, he was also known for his talent. In the Indian Military Academy, he dabbled in art and sketched very well. He derived joy from making cards from waste material, reading books, and playing drums. The officers at the Raj Rifs made him get all his instruments from Delhi to form the musical troupe later called ‘Hanif 7’.

Question 4.

How did Hema Aziz teach her children the message that “one’s duty is the most important thing in life”?

Answer:

Being a widow with three children to be brought up, Hema Aziz had to work. Being a vocal artist, she had to travel a lot with the performance wing of the Information and Broadcasting Ministry. When she went out to work, she offered no explanation to her children. However, the children took the cue and got the message that one’s duty is the most important thing in life. They also grew up to be responsible.

THE BIRD OF HAPPINESS

The Bird of Happiness Questions and Answers, Notes, Summary

Question 1.

Will I ever make it”? Why did Wangjia feel so?

Answer:

In the first phase of the journey itself, Wangjia faced insurmountable difficulties. The smooth road had turned into a vast scree and every stone on it was as sharp as a knife. After the first hundred miles, the soles of Wangjia’s boots were ripped apart by the stones; after the second hundred miles, his feet were cut to pieces; and after the third hundred miles, his hands were torn to shreds. Since the going was so tough, Wangjia had moments of doubt and he wondered if he would ever make it.

Question 2.

What hardships did Wangjia undergo on his way to find the Bird?

Answer:

There were three phases to his journey and in every phase Wangjia’s hardships increased. In the first phase, when Wangjia refused to carry out the command of the first monster to kill Lousang’s mother, the smooth road turned into vast scree and every stone on it was as sharp as a knife. After the first

hundred miles, the soles of Wangjia's boots were ripped apart by the stones; after the second hundred miles, his feet were cut to pieces; and after the third hundred miles, his hands were torn to shreds. Since the going was so tough, Wangjia had moments of doubt and he wondered if he would ever make it.

In the second phase, when Wangjia refused to obey the second monster's command to poison old gaffer Silong, the monster blew away Wangjia's bread-bag and turned the blue mountains and green rivers into a boundless desert with no food to be found anywhere. Wangjia traveled 300 miles without food with his head reeling and with sharp pain in his guts, as if they were being cut by a knife. This was not all. The last phase of his journey was even worse.

When Wangjia refused to carry out the command of the third monster to bring Bhima's eyeballs, the monster gouged out Wangjia's eyeballs. The rest of the journey had to be carried out by Wangjia in his blind state. He groped his way with his hands on the ground. Yet he continued his journey resolutely in the direction of the sun as he believed that the bird must be in a place in that direction. All this Wangjia did because he honored his promise to his people and he remembered the hope of his people that he would take with him the bird of happiness.

Question 3.

What changes came over Wangjia as the Bird of Happiness caressed him?

Answer:

As soon as the Bird of Happiness caressed Wangjia gently, his eyeballs flew back to their sockets, and he could now see much more brightly than before. All his wounds were healed and he was stronger than ever. Thus magical changes came over Wangjia as the Bird of Happiness caressed him.

Question 4.

Wangjia was face to face with three monsters. Each monster had his own wish. Wangjia too had a wish. What contrast do you draw between the wishes of the monster and the wish of Wangjia? What does the folktale suggest with this contrast?

Answer:

The first monster wanted Wangjia to kill Lousang's mother. Wangjia refused to obey the monster saying that he loved his mother and would never kill another person's mother. The second monster wanted Wangjia to poison old gaffer Silong. Again Wangjia's reply was in the negative. Wangjia defied the monster in the face saying that he loved his own grandpa and wouldn't kill the grandfather of another. The third monster wanted Wangjia to bring Bhima's eyeballs if he wanted to see the Bird of Happiness.

Again Wangjia refused to add that no one had the right to destroy a girl's pretty eyes. Thus, every wicked wish of the monsters was refused by Wangjia. If the monsters represent the destructive element in the world, Wangjia stands for the constructive spirit. The story shows that when one stands for good and what is right, one comes across many obstacles and hardships; but if one has the strength of character and the power of conviction, one can overcome all hurdles and reach one's destination.

Question 5.

Read paragraph 1 and paragraph 28 and 29. What do you understand from them about the meaning of real happiness?

Answer:

The lesson clearly shows that when one is blessed with the bounty of nature, one will be happy. Happiness is not depicted as the possession of material wealth. In the first paragraph, it is given that the people of the poor area in Tibet, suffered from hunger and cold as the place had no rivers or good land, no warmth or fresh flowers, no trees or green grass. In paragraphs 28 and 29 we see that Wangjia asks for warmth and happiness, forests and flowers, fields and rivers.

In paragraph 29 we see that the Bird of Happiness gave three cries and with the first cry, the golden sun broke through the clouds and a warm breeze came down from the sky. At the second cry, stretch upon stretch of forest appeared all over the mountains, mountain peach and other mountain flowers bloomed together and thrushes and larks led a chorus of birdsong. At the third cry, green rivers and fields came into view and little white rabbits danced merrily on the grass. After these details, it is also given that the people of the place never suffered hardships again. From all this it's clear that happiness means being blessed by nature to enjoy the natural pleasures of nature.

Question 6.

What do you like the most in the story? Support your answer by giving reasons.

Answer:

We like Wangjia the most in the story. He was so young to take such a risk. We like his selfless hard work. He did a great task for the benefit of his people. He faced many hardships during his task. He didn't care about his life also. To work for others is really a good job. everyone will appreciate his work.

Question 7.

Read the story. Discuss with your partner and fill in the table given below.

Answer:

Monster's Wangjia's answer/ actions
First Monster To kill Lousang's mother. He loved his mother and he never killed other person mothers.
Second Monster To poison old gaffer long. He was fond of his grandpa and he never killed other man's.
Third Monster To bring Bhima's eyeballs. No one has the right to destroy a girl's pretty eyes. He never gouges Bhima's eyes.

Question 8.

We want to lead a happy life. What according to you can make us happy? Some ways are suggested below. Think about whether they are practicable or impracticable. Discuss and Write them under the two columns appropriately.

- a. working hard to satisfy everybody's wants.**
- b. giving up all selfish desires.**
- c. striking a balance between selfishness and sacrifice.**

- d. working together for the good of all
- e. leading a simple, contented life
- f. devoting sometime of the day for the good of others.

Answer:

Practicable Impracticable (d) Working together for the good of all

- (e) Leading a simple contented life.
- (f) Devoting sometime of the day for the good of others
- a) working hard to satisfy everybody's wants
- b) giving up all selfish desires.
- c) striking a balance between selfishness and sacrifice.

The Bird of Happiness Additional Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

Question 1.

Why did none of the people who went in search of the Bird of Happiness return?

Answer:

The Bird of Happiness was guarded by three monsters who could kill a man by simply blowing through their long beards. They made the journey too tough for the people.

Question 2.

What sustained Wangjia in the second phase of the journey?

Answer:

When Wangjia had nothing to eat, he went to a river, drank plenty of water and continued on his way and continued with determination.

Question 3.

What did the old folk of Tibet say about happiness?

Answer:

The old folk used to say that happiness was a beautiful bird. It lived far away, on a snowy mountain in the east. Wherever the bird flew, happiness went with it. The bird was said to be guarded by three monsters.

Question 4.

Why did Wangjia decide not to go back?

Answer:

Though the journey was very tough, Wangjia decided not to go back. He knew that the people at home were waiting for him to bring back happiness.

Question 5.

What was the result of Wangjia's journey to find the bird of happiness?

Answer:

Wangjia was able to achieve what no one else from his village was able to achieve. He was able to find the Bird of Happiness. He was able to make the bird come to his village with him. Since the bird took happiness wherever it went, he was able to make his people happy.

Question 6.

If the monsters are designated to guard the Bird of Happiness, why are they so cruel when the bird itself is so gentle?

Answer:

The three monsters pose to Wangjia three tests to see if Wangjia would kill and harm others to gain his own end. The monsters pose hardships to see if Wangjia would give up his goal easily or not. Since Wangjia wins the tests given by three different monsters, he gets to see the Bird of Happiness. Thus the monsters, in reality, are the trick used by the Bird of Happiness to determine whether Wangjia is genuinely interested in helping his people out.

Question 7.

How did, the bird of happiness relieve the poor people of their hardships?

Answer:

Wangjia asked of the bird of happiness for warmth and happiness, forests and flowers, fields and rivers. Standing on the mountain top, the bird gave three loud cries. At the first cry, the golden sun broke through the clouds and a warm breeze came down from the sky. At the second cry, stretch upon stretch of forest appeared all over the mountain. Mountain peach and other mountain flowers bloomed together and thrushes and larks led a chorus of birdsong. At the third cry, green rivers and fields came into view and little white rabbits danced merrily on the grass. The people, who had until then suffered from hunger and cold all the year-round were relieved of their hardships.

The Bird of Happiness Summary in English

Everyone in the world wants to be happy. But how should we get happiness? It is difficult to answer. The author describes one of the Tibetan folktale "The Bird of Happiness". In ancient times, there was a poor area in Tibet. The people who lived in that area suffered from hunger and cold. There was no river or water source, trees, green grass or any types of crops. No fruits, flowers or vegetables. The land was also not good. The people didn't know what happiness could be. In spite of that they believed

that happiness must exist somewhere in the world. According to the old folk, happiness was a beautiful bird living in a snowy mountain, far away in the east.

Wherever the bird flew, the happiness went with it. This bird was said to be guarded by three old monsters, who could kill the man by simply blowing through their long beards. The people who went in search of this bird never returned. Once an extremely bright boy Wangjia was sent to find the Bird of Happiness. According to Tibetan custom the village girls offered Barley, wine and village mothers spread barley grains on his head and wished him a good journey. Wangjia started his Journey towards east. After many days he reached a large mountain covered with snow and it glittered like silver. At that moment an old monster with a black beard appeared before him. The gigantic monster questioned wangjia who he was and how much, daring he was to step that land.

Wangjia said that he had come, to find the Bird of Happiness. The monster replied if he, wanted to find the Bird of happiness, then before that he should kill lousang's mother, otherwise he will be punished. Wangjia did not agree to kill her because he loves his mother and said that a monster can do as he wishes. Hearing wangjia's words the monster became angry and he began to blow through his beard. Immediately the smooth road became a vast land covered with sharp stones.

Wangjia continued his journey, after the first hundred miles the soles of wangjia s boots were ripped, after second hundred miles his feet were cut into pieces; after the third hundred miles, his hands were tom to thin pieces. At that time he thought that it was very difficult to continue. He had a doubt in his mind whether he wants to continue or not. He remembered his people and they had so much confidence in him. How to disappoint those people. So he made up his mind to continue his Journey. He layed on the ground and began to crawl. His clothes were torn; his knees and shoulders were hurt. Finally, he met the second monster.

The second monster was with rage howled if he must poison the old gaffer long, otherwise, he will starve to death. Wangjia rejected to kill him, so in a fury, the old monster blew through his long beard and wangjia's bread -bag flew into the sky. Suddenly the blue mountains and green rivers turned into a boundless desert and not a small piece of food. Wangjia continued his journey his stomach began rumbling with hunger after the hundred miles of his Journey. After the second hundred miles, he was so hungry and his head swam and he began to see stars, after the third hundred miles he had a sharp pain in his guts as if they were being cut by a knife. At last, he reached the third monster at that moment he was nothing but skin and bone. The third monster was old and had a white bore.

He thundered when he saw Wangjia. If Wangjia wanted to see the bird of happiness he had to bring BhCma's eyeballs to him. Wangjia bowed his hetitt and thought and then replied that no One' has the right to destroy a girl's pretty eyes, So I wouldn't do this. The old monster' screamed with anger and began to blow through his long beard. Wangjia's eyeballs Jumped out of their sockets and he became Blind. Wangjia thought that this must be the'last suffering (ordeal) and then proceeded towards the direction of the rising sun,- He crawled nine hundred miles and climbed to the peak of a snow-covered mountain. He heard the voice of the Bird of Happiness.

The bird said that "My lovely child, have you come here for me?" Wangjia was overwhelmed with Joy replied, yes, I have, our people are very affectionate to see you, please come back with me. The Bird of happiness touched Wangjia with love and sang for him. His eyeballs came back to their sockets, his vision was much better and his wounds were healed and became stronger than before. The bird offered some dried meat and cream cake. The bird carried Wangjia back to his home village and they landed on the mountain top.

The bird asked Wangjia what he wants from it. Wangjia replied they want warmth and happiness, forests and flowers, fields and rivers. The Bird of Happiness gave three loud cries. At the first cry, the golden sun broke through the clouds and a warm breeze came down. At the Second cry, the forest appeared all over the mountains, the flowers bloomed together, larks led a chorus of bird song. At the third cry, green rivers and fields came into existence and little white rabbits danced merrily on the grass. All the people of the village never suffered again from that day.

THANK YOU ONE AND ALL.